

**FRONTIERS
OF THE
ROMAN EMPIRE
THE DANUBE LIMES
(WESTERN SEGMENT)**

**EDITED COMPREHENSIVE
WORLD HERITAGE NOMINATION
AUSTRIA, GERMANY, SLOVAKIA**

FRONTIERS OF THE ROMAN EMPIRE THE DANUBE LIMES (WESTERN SEGMENT)

**FINAL WORLD HERITAGE NOMINATION
VOLUME III – Management System – Annexes**

Austria | Germany | Slovakia

Impressum

Main authors

René Ployer and C. Sebastian Sommer

Text contributions

Elsa Brunner, Markus Gschwind, Michael Kling, Wolfgang Kusché, Ľubica Pinčíková, Ruth Pröckl, Anton Schabl, Ricarda Schmidt, Anna Tuhárska, Zsolt Visy, Katrin Wirth

Additional support

Gergő Istvan Farkas, Christof Flügel, Katarína Kosová, Bruno Maldoner, Marianne Pollak, Réka Virágos, Katalin Wollák and members of the national working groups (see chapter 8.a)

Cartography

Wolfgang Kusché, Anton Schabl, Johannes Valenta

Graphic concept and design

Gergő István Farkas

Printing

Digitalprintcenter of the Austrian Federal Ministry of the Interior

Special thanks to all who are involved in the preparation of the nomination and contributed to this project: national and federal governments and institutions, provinces, regional services and municipalities, museums and other organisations for public outreach, professionals as well as volunteers, and owners of parts of the nominated property and buffer zones. Without their help and support, the preparing of this nomination would not have been possible.

Format: 210 × 297 mm

Fonts: Calibri

© 2022

Table of contents

1. Introduction to the Management System	4
<hr/>	
2. Joint declaration for running and expanding the nominated World Heritage Site Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes	7
<hr/>	
3. Management Plans	13
3.a. National Management Plan Austria	13
3.b. National Management Plan Germany	71
3.c. National Management Plan Slovakia	131
<hr/>	
4. Towards a formal Research Framework for the nominated property Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes (Western Segment)	181

1. Introduction to the Management System

Framework of protection and management

The nominated component parts of the *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes (Western Segment)* are legally protected by the national and state laws of the three participating States Parties (Germany, Austria and Slovakia). According to the general legal systems, a lot of responsibility rests with the owners of the sites and the local and regional governments. Within each State Party an appropriate management system has been developed, expressed through a regularly updated Management Plan for the identification, protection, conservation and sustainable use of the respective component part. The national management systems address also the interests and involvement of all stakeholders and the sustainable economic use of the property.

The States Parties involved attach great value to international collaboration as a means to promote the presentation, management and development of the heritage of the European frontiers, by joint initiatives and exchange of experiences. Therefore, the States Parties of the nominated property have agreed on an integrated management system consisting of two closely cooperating and interacting bodies: The *Intergovernmental Committee for the Frontiers of the Roman Empire – Danube Limes (IGC DL)* to oversee and coordinate the overall management at an international level, and the *Management Group for the Frontiers of the Roman Empire – Danube Limes (MG DL)* which assembles those directly responsible for the site management of the property and provides the primary mechanism for sharing best practice. Their function and procedures are laid down in a Joint Declaration (see below chapter 2).

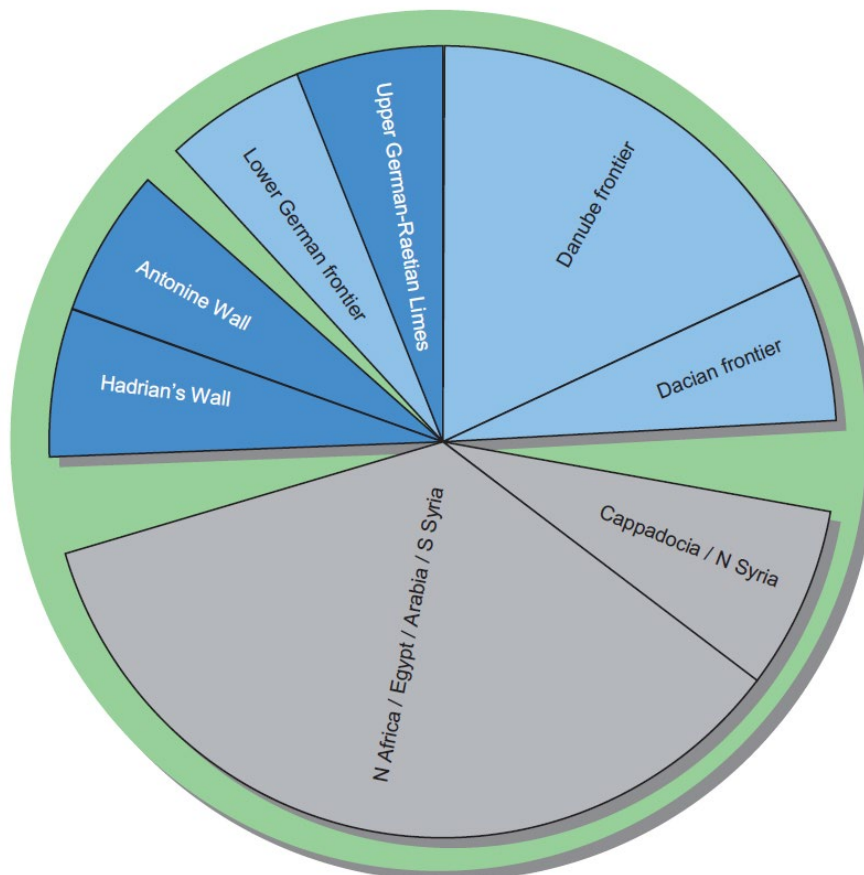


Fig. 1.1: The envisaged Frontiers of the Roman Empire World Heritage Cluster

This follows the system which has been established successfully after the inscription of the Upper German-Raetian Limes for exchange and cooperation concerning all World Heritage matters concerning the *Frontiers of the Roman Empire* and its management. The two main elements are the Intergovernmental Committee (IGC) and the Management Group (also known as the Hexham Group). In the Thematic Study it was suggested that this system would be transferred to the proposed three new properties Frontiers of the Roman Empire.

The aims of a joint management system for the Frontiers of the Roman Empire in Europe include “to achieve common standards of identification, recording, research, protection, conservation, management, presentation and understanding of the Roman frontier, above and below ground, in an inter-disciplinary manner and within a sustainable framework”. These aims are fully shared by the States Parties involved in the preparation of the nomination of the *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes (Western Segment)*.

Since it is no longer envisaged to extend the inscribed property *Frontiers of the Roman Empire* (ref. 430ter), a new overarching framework is needed to support international collaboration in those fields relevant to the overall management and development of the Frontiers of the Roman Empire in Europe as World Heritage. It is the ambition of the States Parties involved to realise such a framework, which is provisionally labelled ‘Frontiers of the Roman Empire World Heritage Cluster’ (hereafter: Cluster).

The Cluster will include both the inscribed and envisaged properties in Europe, and will be open to future extension with frontier sections in North Africa and the Near East (fig. 1.1). The Cluster will include provision to ensure appropriate levels of governance and scientific advice applicable to the Cluster itself and to the individual component World Heritage properties.

The primary aims of the Cluster are the presentation of the World Heritage of the Roman frontiers as a single, coherent monument and the furthering of international cooperation to facilitate management and development of the properties. The existing Bratislava Group will form the basis. This is an international scientific advisory body with expert members from States Parties containing inscribed or potential parts of the WHS FRE. The Bratislava Group aims to share knowledge and experience of Roman frontiers and their identification, protection, conservation, management and presentation, leading to the distillation of a common viewpoint. Through technical and professional advice the Bratislava Group provides a scientific framework for the whole of the Roman frontiers (cf. Thematic Study, Annex B). Its responsibility will cover the four domains of policy, management, scientific advice and public outreach and form the bracket over the inscribed sites Frontiers of the Roman Empire.

Common management aims

The aim of the participating States Parties is, to create a World Heritage Site for the whole of the Danube Limes, as evidence of a specialised frontier of one of the world’s greatest civilisation and as a symbol of a common heritage.

Responsibility for the management of individual parts of the nominated World Heritage Site *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes (Western Segment)* must rest with the individual States Parties and be carried out by each in accordance with their national legislative and management system. Equally it is essential that individual parts of the nominated property are managed within an overall framework of co-operation to achieve common standards of identification, recording, research, protection, conservation, management, presentation and understanding of the *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes (Western Segment)*, above and below ground, in an interdisciplinary manner and within a sustainable framework. Envisioned is the enhancement of respect for the surviving remains of the frontier and the transmission of these remains to future generations. We acknowledge that the *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes (Western Segment)* and its associations as a common feature will bring

people together. This will be achieved also through improved public knowledge, utilising modern information systems.

Internationally, goals over the next few years are:

- ◆ a common vision for the whole *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes (Western Segment)*;
- ◆ increasing public and scientific exchange over the States Parties involved;
- ◆ the creation of a web site;
- ◆ the linking of national data bases;
- ◆ the development of transnational programs to raise awareness;
- ◆ the development of common standards for recording, conservation, management and display;
- ◆ the development of research framework for the *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes (Western Segment)*;
- ◆ support and advice to the States Parties involved in the *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes (Eastern Segment)*.

Nationally, the management systems for each national part of the property would need to address, within the overall framework set out above, identification and definition of the component parts' significance, as well as their conservation, access to them, the interests and involvement of all appropriate organisations and communities from national to local level, and their sustainable economic use.

The management plans within each State Party's existing legislative and management systems are developed for the nominated property concerning the identification, protection, conservation and sustainable use of the nominated component parts. Points that are covered within this are:

- ◆ safeguarding and preservation of the existing archaeological property;
- ◆ planning the conservation and development of protective measures;
- ◆ preservation of the general character of the components;
- ◆ attempt to reactivate historical connections;
- ◆ planning for the scientific investigation;
- ◆ the commitment to involve local communities;
- ◆ the commitment to achieve appropriate balance between conservation, access, the interests of local communities, owners and sustainable economic use of the component parts;
- ◆ the commitment to coordinate activities and participation in the co-ordination mechanisms;
- ◆ to preserve the vitality of the different landscapes at the Danube Limes through forward-looking and integrated development;
- ◆ exploiting public and private resources to increase the protection and the development of the component parts and the landscapes at the Danube Limes;
- ◆ looking for possibilities to enhance the component parts in their appearance;
- ◆ the improvement of accessibility of the component parts;
- ◆ ensuring that the economic advantages of tourism at the Danube Limes are also in the advantage of the local population;
- ◆ extending the education and information offering regarding the property specifically, and the World Heritage in general on a regional, national and international level;
- ◆ intention to develop partnership and compliance with those who are concerned public or private with the Danube Limes, its component parts and their surroundings;
- ◆ an effective implementation and monitoring system.

The management plans are understood as regulatory frameworks, in which both concrete statements regarding future handling of the property as well as perspectives regarding long-term development are laid down. They are not meant as an inflexible proposal; rather, they should be interpreted as an evolving document. They will be revised and updated on a regular basis.

2. Joint declaration for running and expanding the nominated World Heritage Site *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes*

The World Heritage Site *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes* is nominated as a serial transnational World Heritage Site. The States Parties involved hereby declare their aim to conserve the (proposed) Outstanding Universal Value (OUV) of this exceptional archaeological structure with all its nominated component parts. They agree to collaborate in order to preserve the nominated World Heritage Site, to develop knowledge about it and to transmit this to future generations.

The States Parties hereby declare their commitment to coordinate their management of the nominated World Heritage Site. They

- ◆ look forward to continuing their cooperation for the benefit and success of the *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes*
- ◆ will be guided by the Operational Guidelines and decisions of the World Heritage Committee relating to the *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes*
- ◆ recognize the importance of – and need for – coordinated management and monitoring as the foundation for practical actions between and in all participating States Parties
- ◆ agree to continue collaboration in order to identify, protect, conserve, present and transmit to future generations this common heritage of proposed Outstanding Universal Value.

It is also the aim of the States Parties that the *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes* should (in the case of their inscription) be expanded in a future time to include as much of the preserved structures of the *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes* as a whole as feasible. The States Parties recognize that, as the former Roman border along the river Danube stretches down to the Black Sea extending the nominated World Heritage Site will be a complex process.

Each State Party is responsible for taking care of conservation and management of the property within its territory, in accordance with the provisions of the World Heritage Convention, the Operational Guidelines for the Implementation of the World Heritage Convention (“Operational Guidelines”) and the decisions of the World Heritage Committee. This responsibility is managed by each State Party in its own right, in accordance with its legislative and management systems.

In line with section 135 of the Operational Guidelines, an Intergovernmental Committee for the *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes* (IGC DL) is established to coordinate at an international level the management and development of the whole of the nominated World Heritage Site.

By joining the IGC DL, the respective national and regional governments, archaeological and heritage agencies declare their commitment to the identification, protection, conservation, presentation and transmission to future generations of the site within their jurisdiction in accordance with the highest archaeological and heritage standards. The terms of reference of the IGC DL are set out below.

Terms of Reference of the Intergovernmental Committee for the Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes (IGC DL)

1. INTERGOVERNMENTAL COMMITTEE FOR THE NOMINATED FRONTIERS OF THE ROMAN EMPIRE – THE DANUBE LIMES WORLD HERITAGE SITE (IGC DL)

The Intergovernmental Committee (IGC DL) is established in order to coordinate overall management of the nominated *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes* World Heritage Site at an international level. Its Terms of Reference are approved unanimously by all the States Parties involved in the nomination of the *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes*.

The current States Parties involved are Austria, the Federal Republic of Germany and the Slovak Republic.

2. MEMBERSHIP

Membership of the IGC DL consists of the delegations of the States Parties which care for a section of the *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes* currently nominated as World Heritage Site.

The delegations are composed of at least one member of the respective administrations (ministry) in charge of the national sections of the nominated World Heritage Site as well as at least one expert in archaeology or heritage. Delegations may not exceed 5 members.

3. OBJECTIVES

The objectives of the IGC DL are

- ◆ to coordinate at an international level the management, monitoring and development of the nominated *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes* World Heritage Site
- ◆ to advise and support its members in their efforts to conserve and manage those parts of the nominated *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes* World Heritage Site which are under their respective responsibility, in accordance with the World Heritage Convention
- ◆ to promote best practice and common approaches to ensure the continuing World Heritage status of the component parts of the nominated *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes* World Heritage Site in case of their inscription
- ◆ to develop further the management systems of the nominated *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes* World Heritage Site as an evolving instrument, based on the management principles contained in the nomination dossier.
- ◆ to participate at an international level in the development of the properties of the *Frontiers of the Roman Empire World Heritage Cluster*.

4. PROCEDURES

4.1. Chair of the IGC DL

The IGC DL is chaired by one of the States Parties members of the IGC DL. The Chair will provide secretariat support for organizing meetings, disseminating information to IGC DL members, preparing documents for meetings, recording the IGC DL's discussions and coordinating common actions. The Chairmanship changes every other year on February 1, beginning in 2020. It is allocated according to the alphabetical order of the names of the States Parties in English, beginning with Austria.

4.2. Meetings

The IGC DL meets at least once a year. After consulting other members, the Chair of the IGC DL convenes the meetings and decides on the agenda. An extraordinary meeting may be requested by any State Party member of the IGC DL at any time, in writing to the Chair. The Chair will then decide whether and when to convene an extraordinary meeting, after consultation with other members of the IGC DL.

4.3. Decisions

The delegation of each State Party to the IGC DL has only one vote. Decisions of the IGC DL are taken by a three quarters majority of States Parties members of the IGC present, except where otherwise stated below. The quorum for a decision is at least three quarters of all States Parties members. Other members of the IGC DL and Observers participate without the right to vote.

4.4. Observers

The Chair may invite observers to attend IGC DL meetings, after consultation with other members of the IGC DL. These may include observers from those States Parties which care for a section of the *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes* World Heritage Site which is at that time not yet inscribed, particularly of those states which are in the process of developing a nomination. They may also include third party observers, such as from the World Heritage Centre, World Heritage Advisory Bodies and others with special competences in specific subjects to be dealt with at a meeting in order to make a contribution on a consultative basis.

4.5. Publications

Members of the IGC DL are consulted before publication of any document or statement in the name of the IGC DL. All publications in the name of the IGC DL are agreed unanimously by all States Parties members.

4.6. Languages

The working language of the IGC DL is English.

4.7. Expenses

The costs of participating in IGC DL meetings are met by the participants.

4.8. Advisory groups

The IGC DL may seek advice from advisory bodies such as the Management Group DL, the Bratislava Group, and comparable bodies for the existing World Heritage Site *Frontiers of the Roman Empire* (WHS FRE).

4.8.1. Management Group for the nominated *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes* World Heritage Site (MG DL)

The Management Group for the nominated *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes* World Heritage Site (MG DL) is made up of those directly responsible for the site management of the currently inscribed sections of the nominated *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes*. The MG DL provides the primary mechanism for sharing best practice in relation to nominated *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes* World Heritage Site. The MG DL participates at an international level in the management and monitoring of the properties of the *Frontiers of the Roman Empire World Heritage Cluster*.

4.8.2. Bratislava Group

The Bratislava Group is an international scientific advisory body with expert members from States Parties along the frontiers of the Roman Empire, at present primarily in Europe, containing inscribed or potential parts of World Heritage Sites in relation to the frontiers of the Roman Empire. The Bratislava Group aims to share knowledge and experience of Roman frontiers and their identification, protection, conservation, management and presentation, leading to the distillation of a common viewpoint. Through technical and professional advice the Bratislava Group provides a scientific framework for the whole of the Roman frontiers. According to the Thematic Study for the Frontiers of the Roman Empire 2017 (...) it provides the framework to connect all inscribed and potential parts of World Heritage Sites in relation to the frontiers of the Roman Empire (Cluster). The Bratislava Group supports States Parties by:

- ◆ advising on the significance of the Roman frontiers and on the development of best practice guides for their management and improving their understanding
- ◆ developing support structures such as an overall research strategy, an international Roman frontiers database and websites.

5. TASKS

5.1. Coordination

The IGC DL coordinates the management of the nominated *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes* World Heritage Site at the international level. It coordinates responses to the World Heritage Centre for all questions which relate to the whole of the nominated *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes* World Heritage Site. This task is managed by the Chair, which obtains and coordinates information from the States Parties. Individual States Parties will continue to make notifications to the World Heritage Centre in accordance with paragraph 172 of the Operational Guidelines. The IGC DL is guided by common management principles set out in the nomination dossier *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes*. It will deal with those aspects of the nominated *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes* World Heritage Site management which concern more than a single national part.

5.2. Extensions to the nominated *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes* World Heritage Site

5.2.1. Proposals to extend the nominated *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes* World Heritage Site

Any prospective State Party which on its territory does preserve a part or parts of the *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes* is invited to prepare a proposal to join the serial transnational World Heritage Site in case of the prior inscription of the *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes*. At the request of a State Party member of the World Heritage Convention, the IGC DL will consider proposed extensions to *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes* in case of their prior inscription. In accordance with the Operational Guidelines, the member States Parties of the IGC DL must agree unanimously on any proposal for extension to *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes* World Heritage Site (in case of its prior inscription) before the nomination is formally submitted to UNESCO.

5.2.2. Acceptance of this Declaration and Terms of Reference

Any prospective State Party has to accept this Joint Declaration and Terms of Reference.

5.3. Monitoring / Evaluation

The IGC DL supports States Parties in the UNESCO Periodic Reporting. Through its members it coordinates all matters of evaluation of the serial property relating to issues of the nominated *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes* World Heritage Site.

5.4. State of conservation

It is noted that, according to the Operational Guidelines, if part of the property is at risk the whole property can be placed on the List of World Heritage in Danger. States Parties commit themselves to inform the IGC DL of proposed changes of the nominated *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes* World Heritage Site with significant impact on the proposed OUV.

The IGC DL may consider the state of conservation of any component part of the nominated *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes* World Heritage Site as well as planned developments or operations that could potentially damage parts of the nominated *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes* World Heritage Site or its surroundings. The IGC DL may discuss with the States Parties issues relating to the conservation of parts of the nominated *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes* World Heritage Site and its surroundings.

5.5. Presentation and research

The IGC DL promotes the presentation of the nominated *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes* World Heritage Site. It encourages initiatives intended to contribute to the international recognition of the archaeological and historical value of the nominated *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes* World Heritage Site. It encourages scientific research in the nominated *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes* World Heritage Site.

5.6. Nomination of the *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes* as World Heritage Site

The IGC DL coordinates and supervises the preparation of the nomination of the *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes* as World Heritage Site. The States Parties members unanimously agree on all aspects of the nomination dossier and recommend its signature through the relevant representatives of the States Parties.

6. COMMENCEMENT AND AMENDMENTS

The IGC DL and these Terms of Reference come into effect on the date of the signing of this Joint Declaration. The Terms of Reference may be amended at any time, subject to unanimous agreement of the States Parties members. The Terms of Reference will be reviewed five years from the date of signature of the Joint Declaration.

3. Management Plans

The Management Plans of Austria, Germany and Slovakia are presented here in the full English translation alongside their supplements and annexes. The full Management Plans of Austria, Germany and Slovakia in the original language can be found in the national section on the DVD.

3.a. National Management Plan Austria

Table of contents

1. Introduction	15
<hr/>	
2. The Management Plan	16
2.1. Tasks of the Management Plan	16
2.2. Responsibilities	16
<hr/>	
3. The Value of the Danube Limes World Heritage	18
3.1. The Danube Limes	18
3.2. Location and boundaries in Austria	19
3.3. The delineation of boundaries	23
3.4. The outstanding significance of the Danube Limes	26
<hr/>	
4. Potential risks of impacts	30
4.1. Development pressure	30
4.2. Environmental pressures	31
4.3. Natural disasters and risk preparedness	32
4.4. Responsible visitation at World Heritage sites	33
4.5. Other	33
4.6. Institutions concerned with prevention of risks	33
<hr/>	
5. Management System	36
5.1. International level	36
5.2. Management System in Austria	39
<hr/>	
6. Specific measures – action plan	48
6.1. Challenges	48
6.2. Action plan	48

1. Introduction

The World Heritage Site *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes (Western Segment)* is nominated as a serial transnational World Heritage Site. The States Parties involved (Austria, Germany and Slovakia) declared their aim to conserve the (proposed) Outstanding Universal Value (OUV) of this exceptional archaeological structure with all its nominated component parts.

Each State Party is responsible for taking care of conservation and management of the property within its territory, in accordance with the provisions of the World Heritage Convention, the Operational Guidelines for the Implementation of the World Heritage Convention (“Operational Guidelines”) and the decisions of the World Heritage Committee.

The great public interest on this nomination was expressed in 2007 with the acceptance of the Resolution (E-222-BR/2007) of the Federal Council of the Republic of Austria of 20 July 2007 (162/A(E)-BR/2007): *The Federal Government is requested within one year the project "World Heritage Donau Limes" to prepare and to apply to UNESCO for nomination in the World Heritage List.*

During the following years the nomination was prepared very carefully and also involving the affected communities. All communities in the area of the nominated world heritage location have emphasised by votes in their local councils their support for the planned world heritage application and have declared their willingness to respect the core and buffer zones in all council planning and in particular with regard to zoning should the Danube Limes in Austria be admitted to the UNESCO world heritage list.

One part of the nomination according section 108 of the Operational Guidelines concern an “appropriate management plan” which incorporates the objectives and measures to ensure preservation of the Outstanding Universal Value, the authenticity and the integrity of the World Heritage property in question. This responsibility is managed by each State Party in its own right, in accordance with its legislative and management systems.

The present management plan is understood as regulatory framework, in which both concrete statements regarding future handling of the property as well as perspectives regarding long-term development are laid down. This plan is not meant as an inflexible proposal; it should be rather interpreted as an evolving document. It will be revised and updated on a regular basis, at least every 7 years beginning from inscription.

2. The Management Plan

2.1. Tasks of the Management Plan

In line with the requirements of the World Heritage Convention, the Management plan incorporates the objectives and measures to ensure preservation of the Outstanding Universal Value, the authenticity and the integrity of the World Heritage property in question. The management plan in its current form fulfills the specifications related to management plans as part of the nomination documentation set out in the Operational Guidelines document.

The plan is thus an integrated plan of action: referring to existing acts of law, legally binding regulations passed by the federal, provincial and municipal governments as well as to planning at local and regional levels, the Management Plan identifies the tools and measures needed to help protect and develop the Danube Limes World Heritage in Austria.

The main objectives of the Management Plan:

- ◆ to define, based on a holistic and sustainable approach, goals and measures to safeguard and develop the World Heritage;
- ◆ to describe the existing legal situation with regard to the Monument Protection Act, other protection laws and the associated planning instruments.
- ◆ to provide a document serving as the basis to allow the municipalities, the regional and national authorities and civil society to verify, on an ongoing basis, the implementation of the objectives of the World Heritage Convention;
- ◆ effective use of planning tools to alleviate the monument threats
- ◆ monument preservation through the application of regional planning, regional planning and construction planning instruments
- ◆ to document rules for managing the World Heritage, for the organization of World Heritage management and for cooperative quality assurance;
- ◆ to raise the general public's awareness of and interest in World Heritage.

The present management plan is understood as regulatory framework, in which both concrete statements regarding future handling of the property as well as perspectives regarding long-term development are laid down. This plan is not meant as an inflexible proposal; it should be rather interpreted as an evolving document. It will be revised and updated on a regular basis, at least every 7 years beginning from inscription.

2.2. Responsibilities

The Convention Concerning the Protection of the World Cultural and Natural Heritage was established in 1972 by the UNESCO General Conference in order to identify natural and cultural heritage and to include this heritage in a List of World Heritage which is of outstanding interest and value to all of humanity.

By signing the Convention, the Republic of Austria has undertaken to protect and to preserve those properties situated within its territory, which are inscribed on the World Heritage List. Within Austrian legislation, regulations relating to World Heritage have been defined in the Convention Concerning the Protection of the World Cultural and Natural Heritage Including Austria's Declaration (Übereinkommen zum Schutz des Kultur- und Naturerbes der Welt samt österreichischer Erklärung; Federal Law Gazette 60/1993). Department IV/4 (Monument Protection, Building Culture and Art Restitution Affairs) of the Austrian Federal Ministry for Arts, Culture, the Public Service and Sport is responsible for implementing

and monitoring the UNESCO World Heritage Convention. This department is also responsible for the general coordination as focal point for the World Heritage Center and also for ICOMOS. It receives support in this role from the Department of Art and Culture of the Office of the Upper Austrian Provincial Government, the Department of Art and Culture of the Office of the Lower Austrian Provincial Government and the Viennese municipal department 7 / Vienna City Archeology. The Austrian UNESCO Commission is the national liaison office of all work areas of UNESCO, a counseling center, a point of contact for information and exchange of information and also the business office of the permanent Austrian World-Heritage Site conference.

In the case of the Danube Limes, a key role in providing expert guidance is given by the Federal Monuments Authority Austria, but also supported by the subject-specific departments of the federal provinces Upper Austria, Lower Austria and Vienna.



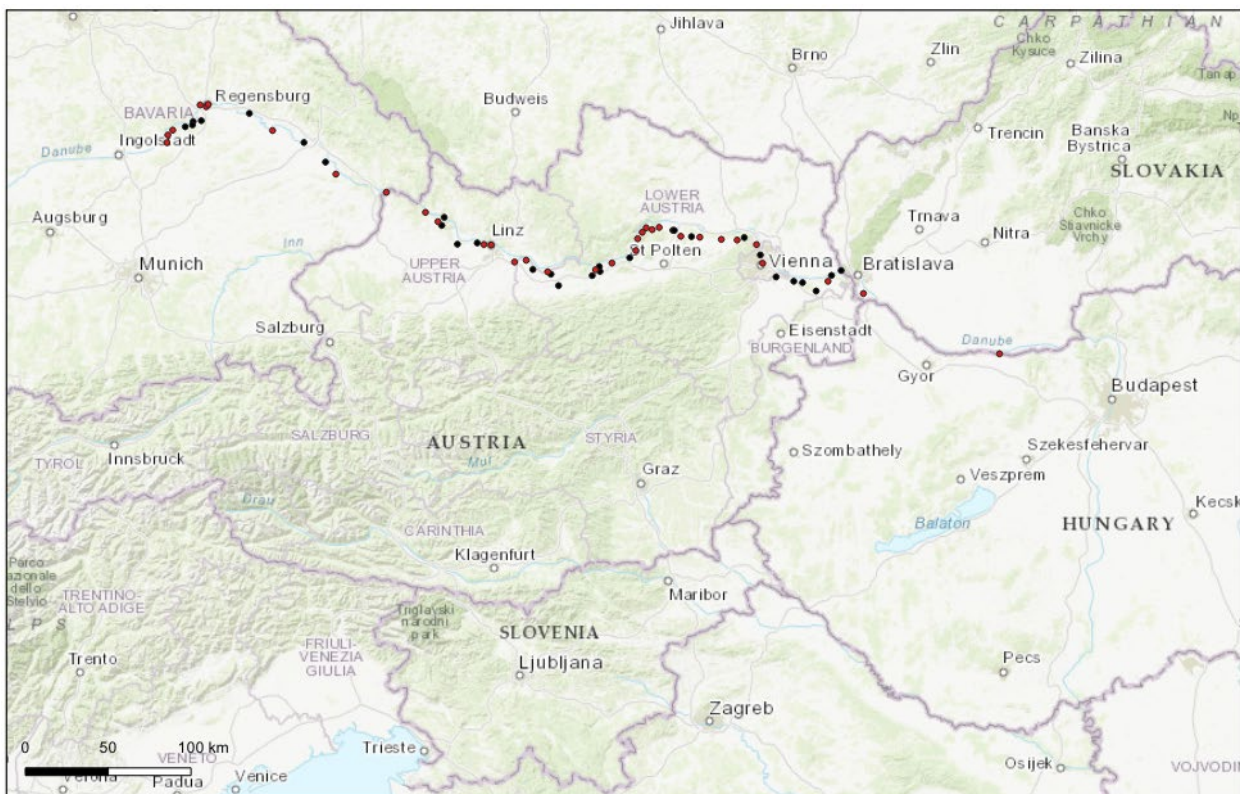
Linz, Aerial view of the Martinsfeld (ID No 13a)

3. The Value of the Danube Limes World Heritage

3.1. The Danube Limes

The *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes (Western Segment)* is located within the territories of the States Parties of Germany, Austria and Slovakia. It constitutes the northern and eastern boundaries of the Roman provinces of *Raetia* (eastern half), *Noricum* and *Pannonia*, running for about 600 km along the river Danube, from Bad Gögging in Germany to Iža in Slovakia - 345 km in Austria. Based on the systematic military occupation of the Danube banks which occurred during the Flavian dynasty (69–96 AD) the linear border defense system emerged and was developed. The first permanent legionary fortresses were established in the second half of the 1st century (in Austria: Vindobona (Wien) and Carnuntum (Bad Deutsch-Altenburg)). As part of that system the Romans erected a continuous chain of military installations – legionary fortresses, forts, fortlets, watchtowers and in later periods so-called *burgi*, counter fortifications and bridgeheads as well as associated structures – with a distance of usually 10 to 30 kilometres in order to control traffic on the southern bank of the river and social interactions along and across the river.

The most distinctive feature of a river frontier of course is the river itself. Over the last 2000 years the river beds often changed courses. These changes are of geological or hydrological reason. Here some forts have been destroyed from the Danube partly or totally. Beginning with the 19th century, river regulations have caused significant changes.



Overview of the position of the selected component parts (red) in the series *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes (Western segment)* for its whole length (between Bad Gögging (DE) and Iža (SK) with the background of all potential Roman sites (black) along the relevant section of the Danube in the three countries (Rien Polak 2017 for the Thematic Study FRE).

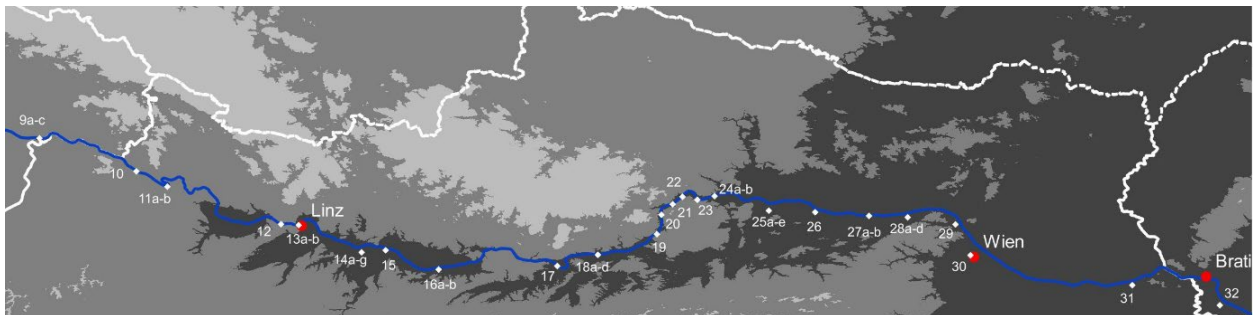
3.2. Location and boundaries in Austria

The Austrian Limes section is about 345 km long and runs along the river Danube from the border of Germany (Bavaria) close to Passau through Upper and Lower Austria and Vienna to the area east of Hainburg/Wolfsthal beside the Slovakian border and the city of Bratislava.

The first demarcation line of the Danube Limes came into existence when the frontier territory was turned into official Roman provinces Raetia (today in Bavaria), Noricum (today in Austria) and Pannonia (today in Austria and Hungary) around AD 40. For over 400 years this fortification system was the outer borderline of the Roman Empire, protecting it from the tribes to the North. The frontier in Noricum was given up by Rome in 487/88 AD. On its abandonment quite some fortification elements were reused during the Middle Ages and survived well preserved into present days.

The frontier system in Austria consisted of a chain of fortifications along the south bank of the river Danube using the river as an additional obstacle and as a communication, supply and trade route. Along the course of the river line lay four legionary fortresses (Upper Austria: Enns; Lower Austria: Albing, Carnuntum; Vienna: Wien), 12 forts and fortlets (Upper Austria: Oberranna, Schlögen, Linz; Lower Austria: Wallsee, Ybbs, Pöchlarn, Mautern, Traismauer, Zwentendorf, Tulln, Zeiselmauer, Klosterneuburg) and 6 watch-towers (Upper Austria: Hirschleitengraben; Lower Austria:

Blashausraben, St. Johann im Mauerthale, Bacharnsdorf, St. Lorenz, Windstalgraben). The individual military installations and other ancillary features were linked by a supra-regional road, the Limes road, identified and preserved in some parts. Besides the fortresses, forts and fortlets existed civil settlements and cemeteries.



Overview of the position of the selected component parts in Austria.

Table 1

List of all components and component parts in Austria

ID No	Component part	Federal state	Administrative district	Municipality
10	Oberranna – Kleinkastell	Oberösterreich	Schärding	Engelhartzell
11a	Schlögen –Vicus	Oberösterreich	Grieskirchen; Eferding	St. Agatha; Haibach ob der Donau
11b	Schlögen – Kastell	Oberösterreich	Grieskirchen; Eferding	St. Agatha; Haibach ob der Donau
12	Hirschleitengraben – Wachturm	Oberösterreich	Linz-Land	Wilhering
13a	Linz – Siedlung Mansfeld	Oberösterreich	Statutarstadt Linz	Linz
13b	Linz – Befestigung Schloßberg	Oberösterreich	Statutarstadt Linz	Linz
14a	Enns – Gräberstraße	Oberösterreich	Linz-Land	Enns

ID No	Component part	Federal state	Administrative district	Municipality
14b	Enns – Canabae Südwest	Oberösterreich	Linz-Land	Enns
14c	Enns –St. Laurenz	Oberösterreich	Linz-Land	Enns
14d	Enns – Canabae Nordwest	Oberösterreich	Linz-Land	Enns
14e	Enns – Canabae Nordost	Oberösterreich	Linz-Land	Enns
14f	Enns – Legionslager, Zentralbereich	Oberösterreich	Linz-Land	Enns
14g	Enns – Legionslager Nordecke	Oberösterreich	Linz-Land	Enns
15	Albing – Legionslager	Niederösterreich	Amstetten	St. Pantaleon-Erla
16a	Wallsee – Kastell	Niederösterreich	Amstetten	Wallsee-Sindelburg
16b	Wallsee – Kleinkastell			
17	Ybbs – Kleinkastell	Niederösterreich	Melk	Ybbs an der Donau
18a	Pöchlarn – Kastell Hufeisenturm West	Niederösterreich	Melk	Pöchlarn
18b	Pöchlarn – Kastell Zentralbereich	Niederösterreich	Melk	Pöchlarn
18c	Pöchlarn – Kastell Hufeisenturm Ost	Niederösterreich	Melk	Pöchlarn
18d	Pöchlarn –Vicus und Kastellbad	Niederösterreich	Melk	Pöchlarn
19	Blashausgraben – Wachturm	Niederösterreich	Melk	Schönbühel-Aggsbach
20	St. Johann im Mauerthale – Wachturm	Niederösterreich	Krems	Rossatz-Arnsdorf
21	Bacharnsdorf – Wachturm	Niederösterreich	Krems	Rossatz-Arnsdorf
22	St. Lorenz – Wachturm	Niederösterreich	Krems	Rossatz-Arnsdorf
23	Windstalgraben – Wachturm	Niederösterreich	Krems	Rossatz-Arnsdorf
24a	Mautern – Kastell und Westbereich	Niederösterreich	Krems	Mautern an der Donau
24b	Mautern – Kastell und Ostbereich	Niederösterreich	Krems	Mautern an der Donau
25a	Traismauer – Kastell südwestlicher Fächerturm	Niederösterreich	St. Pölten-Land	Traismauer
25b	Traismauer – Kleinkastell	Niederösterreich	St. Pölten-Land	Traismauer
25c	Traismauer – Kastell Zentralbereich	Niederösterreich	St. Pölten-Land	Traismauer
25d	Traismauer – Kastell Römertor	Niederösterreich	St. Pölten-Land	Traismauer
25e	Traismauer – Kastell und Kleinkastell	Niederösterreich	St. Pölten-Land	Traismauer
26	Zwentendorf – Kastell, Vicus, Gräberfelder	Niederösterreich	Tulln	Zwentendorf
27a	Tulln – Kastell Hufeisenturm	Niederösterreich	Tulln	Tulln
27b	Tulln – Kastell Zentralbereich	Niederösterreich	Tulln	Tulln
28a	Zeiselmauer – Kleinkastell	Niederösterreich	Tulln	Zeiselmauer-Wolfpassing
28b	Zeiselmauer – Kastell Zentralbereich	Niederösterreich	Tulln	Zeiselmauer-Wolfpassing

ID No	Component part	Federal state	Administrative district	Municipality
28c	Zeiselmauer – Kastell Hufeisenturm	Niederösterreich	Tulln	Zeiselmauer-Wolfpassing
28d	Zeiselmauer – Kastell Kastentor, Fächerturm, Ostmauer	Niederösterreich	Tulln	Zeiselmauer-Wolfpassing
29	Klosterneuburg – Kastell und Vicus	Niederösterreich	Tulln	Klosterneuburg
30	Wien – Legionslager Zentralbereich	Wien	Wien	Wien
31	Carnuntum – Legionslager, Kastell, Befestigungen, Zivilstadt, Vici, Gräberfelder	Niederösterreich	Bruck an der Leitha	Petronell-Carnuntum and Bad Deutsch-Altenburg

3.2.1. THE DELINEATION OF BOUNDARIES

The delineation of boundaries is an essential requirement in the establishment of effective protection of the nominated components:

Description delineation core zone

The core zones include the military facilities of the Danube River in the strict sense, this means the location close to the Danube and functionally to the Danube Limes attributable military institutions, and the other structures causally related to these: these are inter alia the supply and leisure of military personnel serving facilities such as camps or amphitheater, but also in general civilian settlements like campvici or urban settlements, production and craft areas and burial grounds, the emergence of which was conditioned by the military facilities.

The delineation of the core zones is based on the secure existing archaeological substance. "Secured" is the archaeological substance when archaeological methods have proved their existence according to the state of science and technology with such high probability that on this basis an expert evaluation of the meaning of the respective object (also in the sense of the respective national monument protection law) is possible.

Non-built-up areas with appropriate archaeological substance and preserved above ground buildings / building remains are of particular importance in delineation of the core zones. However, existing overbuilding of the archaeological substance is by no means an exclusion criterion if this substance is well preserved under and protected by the overbuilding. Such areas of the core zones can either be considered as "reserves" - currently difficult to access - for the future or serve - like the Archaeological Park Carnuntum – for the mediation while preserving the (partially invisible) substance.



Zeiselmauer, fan-shaped tower (ID No 28d)

Description delineation buffer zone

Buffer zones are only to be defined for those objects with professional reasons and promise lasting success for the mediation and further management.

This is given in particular cases:

- ◆ The buffer zone responds to the specific circumstances of an object by mapping visual relationships from a military device into the landscape; these visual relationships were decisive for the location / genesis and function of the military facility in the ancient and still exist today (at least in part).
- ◆ The buffer zone reacts to the special conditions of an object by depicting visual relationships on monuments that are above-ground visible that belong to the core zone.
- ◆ The buffer zone represents an existing or desirable consideration of archeology in planning instruments (e.g. zoning plan, reserved areas) and / or areas of increased observation intensity concerning archaeological monument conservation or of increased mediation potential, which do not belong to the core zone due to a lack of fulfillment of the defined criteria, but in any case - in the sense of the basic criteria for the selection of objects - are to be assigned to the military facilities of the Danube Limes and their causally related structures.

3.3. The outstanding significance of the Danube Limes

PROPOSED STATEMENT OF OUTSTANDING UNIVERSAL VALUE

The *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes (Western Segment)* were a river frontier, running for around 600 km along the Danube, from Bad Gögging in Germany through Austria to Iža in Slovakia, constituting the middle European boundary of the Roman Empire against the ‘barbarians’ in the north. This frontier faced varying topography from densely wooded areas to plains. The river Danube formed a frontier from the mid-1st century AD for more than 400 years. The military infrastructures on the right bank of the river at carefully chosen sites consisted of fortifications of different sizes – legionary fortresses, auxiliary forts, fortlets, watchtowers, harbours with their associated civil structures – located at irregular intervals according to the regional topography. Clusters of temporary camps, bridgeheads on both sides of the Danube and a chain of watchtowers along the southern bank of the river and the parallel Limes road are special assets of this property. The varying sizes and compositions of the garrisons recruited all over the Roman Empire attempted a well-balanced system of linear survey and interaction with the hinterland as well as the areas beyond the river. The river itself was not only a boundary, but belonging to Rome it was a route of transport both in military and civil, commercial sense. Key value is the evolution of military strategies to counter the threats emanating from sustained large-scale migration. The Marcomannic Wars of 166-180 AD caused a serious disruption of the development of this frontier with the result of a strengthening of the military installations afterwards. The last significant overall military building process with new types of installations took place under and after the reign of the Emperor Valentinian at the end of the 4th century. The *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes (Western Segment)* finally broke down under the attack of the Huns and Germanic people. It was given up by Rome in the second half of the 5th century. For topographical reasons many abandoned or partially destroyed Roman buildings still standing high were occupied and reused by people in the Middle Ages along the line of the *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes (Western Segment)*. Therefore sites where once Roman military was garrisoned served as nuclei for present day villages and towns, sometimes incorporating the remains of the buildings more the 1600 years old preserved to the second or third floor even today.

Criteria

Criterion (ii):

The extant remains of the *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes (Western Segment)* constitute significant elements of the Roman Frontiers present in Europe. With its legionary fortresses, forts, fortlets, watchtowers, linked infrastructure and civilian architecture it exhibits an important interchange of human and cultural values at the apogee of the Roman Empire, through the development of Roman military architecture, extending the technical knowledge of construction and management to the very edges of the Empire. It reflects the imposition of a complex frontier system on the existing societies of the northern part of the Roman Empire, introducing for the first time military installations and related civilian settlements, linked through an extensive supporting network based on the river Danube. The frontier did not constitute an impregnable barrier, but controlled and allowed the movement of peoples: not only the military units, but also civilians and merchants. Hence, it triggered the exchange of cultural values through movement of soldiers and civilians from different nations. This entailed profound changes and developments in terms of settlement patterns, architecture and landscape design and spatial organization.

Criterion (iii):

The nominated property *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes (Western Segment)* has an extraordinarily high cultural value as it shows the interaction of occupying force with the local people and circumstances. It bears an exceptional testimony to the maximum extension of the power of the Roman Empire through the consolidation of its northern frontiers and thus constitutes a physical manifestation of Roman imperial policy. It illustrates the Roman Empire's ambition to dominate the world in order to establish its law and way of life there in a long-term perspective. It witnesses Roman colonization in the respective territories, the spread of Roman culture and its different traditions – military, engineering, architecture, religion management and politics – and the large number of human settlements associated with the defences, which contribute to an understanding of how soldiers and their families lived in this part of the Roman Empire. The property also adds some specific features to the variation and evolution of the military strategies applied by the Roman Empire to control external 'barbarian' societies.

Criterion (iv):

The *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes (Western Segment)* is an outstanding example of Roman military architecture and technological development through four centuries, adapting standardized approaches to various geographical and strategic conditions. Following different needs in some parts the military installations controlled mainly segments of the river. Other sectors are characterized by a dense chain of watchtowers following the Danube between the forts over hundreds of kilometres connected by the Limes road. This demonstrates the similarity in purpose and design of the river frontier with artificial linear frontiers. Military campaigns are reflected by temporary camps built by troops drawn together around existing forts. For the sake of a more effective defence a series of bridgeheads were built on both river banks. In late Roman times the *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes (Western Segment)* show the changes of warfare through new developments in military architecture (horseshoe- and fan-shaped towers; strongly fortified fortlets). Many of these constructions became the nuclei of later settlements. Through their continuous use till today they are eminently accountable for our impression of medieval towns along the Danube.

Integrity

The nominated component parts of the *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes (Western Segment)* convey the extraordinary complexity and coherence of Roman frontier installations. Although some parts have been affected by changes of land use and natural processes, the integrity of the property is demonstrated through its visible remains and buried archaeological features. Their state of survival has been researched intensively in many areas through archaeological excavations, the processing of archival records as well as aerial photography, geophysical and field surveys. Several component parts have been built over, but where relevant archaeological remains have been proven to exist they have been included in the property. The selection for the nomination is significant for all the elements which once constituted the frontier system. They visualize the topographic specifics and the intensive cultural exchange. They represent the long period in which the Danube formed parts of the frontiers of the Roman Empire. Therefore, through its wholeness and intactness the *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes (Western Segment)* have a high integrity.

Authenticity

The nominated component parts of the *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes (Western Segment)* have a high level of authenticity, carried by their structure, design, material form and function, each having been verified through intensive study and research. Some of the sites have been and are visible as standing monuments, while others were made visible through archaeological investigations. The component parts have been conserved or their conservation is an ongoing process. The materials and substance of underground archaeological remains are well-preserved, as are upstanding and visible remains. Although their surroundings are sometimes built up by later medieval and more recent buildings the nominated component parts are authentic. The form and design of each representative part of the property and its associated structures are clear and comprehensible. Their location and setting demonstrate the Roman strategic pattern and contribute to their authenticity. Later development overlying parts of the frontier are treated as vertical buffer zones. There are a small number of reconstructions of elements of the frontier such as parts of forts and civil structures, however, they either incorporate the original or try to be as close as possible to it.



Schlögen, bath house in the vicus during the excavation 2014/15 (ID No 11a)

Protection and Management

The nominated component parts of the *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes (Western Segment)* are legally protected by the national law. According to the general legal systems, a lot of responsibility rests with the owners of the sites and the local and regional governments. An appropriate management system for Austria has been developed, expressed through a regularly updated Management Plan for the identification, protection, conservation and sustainable use of the respective component part. This national management systems addresses also the interests and involvement of all stakeholders and the sustainable economic use of the property.

The State Party involved attaches great value to international collaboration as a means to promote the presentation, management and development of the heritage of the European frontiers, by joint initiatives and exchange of experiences.

3.4. Protective designation

3.4.1. INTERNATIONAL CONVENTIONS, CHARTERS AND RECOMMENDATIONS

The legal protection of the component parts of the serial nomination *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes (Western Segment)* is submitted to a number of international conventions. Some were adopted by UNESCO, others by ICOMOS International, and some by the Council of Europe. Some concern the protection of archaeological heritage in general terms (Valetta Convention 1992; The Hague Convention 1954). Others imply the invention of illicit transfer of cultural property (UNESCO 1970 or UNIDROIT 1995) and others.

Table 2

International conventions relevant to the *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes (Western Segment)* with year of ratification

Convention	Year	Ratification		
		DE	AT	SK
UNESCO Convention for the Protection of Cultural Property in the Event of Armed Conflict (The Hague Convention)	1954, 2 nd Add. Protocol 1999	1967	1964	1993
European Convention on the Protection of the Archaeological Heritage (London Convention)	1969	1975	1974	---
UNESCO Convention on the Means of Prohibiting and Preventing the Illicit Import, Export and Transfer of Ownership of Cultural Property	1970	2007	2015	1993
UNESCO Convention Concerning the Protection of the World Cultural and National Heritage (World Heritage Convention)	1972	1976	1992	1993
Convention for the Protection of the Architectural Heritage of Europe (Granada Convention)	1985	1987	---	2001
European Convention on the Protection of the Archaeological Heritage (Valetta Convention)	1992	2003	2015	2000
UNIDROIT Convention on Stolen or Illegally Exported Cultural Objects (Rome)	1995	---	---	2003
European Landscape Convention (Florence Convention)	2000	----	----	2005
Convention on the Value of Cultural Heritage for Society (Faro Convention)	2005	---	2015	2013

Table 3

International charters and recommendations relevant to the *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes (Western Segment)*

Charter/Recommendation	Year
UNESCO Recommendation on International Principles Applicable to Archaeological Excavations (New Delhi)	1956
International Charter for the Conservation and Restoration of Monuments and Sites (The Venice Charter)	1964
Charter for the Conservation of Historic Towns and Urban Areas (Washington Charter)	1987
Charter for the protection and management of the archaeological heritage (The Lausanne Charter)	1990
The Nara Document on Authenticity	1994
Council conclusions of 21 May 2014 on cultural heritage as a strategic resource for a sustainable Europe (2014/C 183/08)	2014

3.4.2. NATIONAL PROTECTION LEGISLATION

In the Austrian federal state the distribution of power between the federal state and the nine autonomous federal provinces in terms of the legislative and executive sectors is laid down in Austrian Constitutional Law (Bundes-Verfassungsgesetz (B-VG)), which differentiates between several types of allocations of competencies (BGBl. Nr. 1/1930 idGF). The competencies relevant to the protection of the cultural heritage are partly allocated to the federal state in terms of legislation and implementation (Article 10 Section 1 B-VG), but in part covered by the general clause to the benefit of the regions (Article 15 Section 1 B-VG).

The protection of monuments is embedded in the catalogue of competencies related to legislation and implementation invested in the **Federal State** (Article 10 (1) Z 13 B-VG). The protection of monuments on the basis of their historic, artistic or other cultural importance is therefore regulated by the Monument Protection Act passed by the Austrian Parliament (BGBl. Nr. 533/1923 idF BGBl. I Nr. 92/2013). The Monument Protection Act (DMSG) is implemented almost entirely by the Federal Monuments Authority (BDA). Archaeological objects – portable or immovable – are defined in the DMSG as “remains and traces of human processes and of artificial or shaped earthworks” (§ 1 DMSG). Regulations essentially similar to those concerning other monuments apply to archaeological objects, in particular with regard to their destruction, modification and export. However, special regulations also apply, for example regarding chance finds and measures aimed at securing the finds site and the finds objects (§§ 8-11 DMSG). According to Appendix 2 of the 2000 Environmental Impact Assessment law (UVP-G 2000) UNESCO world heritage sites belong to the category “sites worthy of protection” (BGBl. Nr. 697/1993 idF BGBl. I 111/2017). From a particular size upwards (threshold) all projects must be subjected to an assessment of their impact and procedures.

States legislation

Building law including townscape protection, some parts of local planning and the protection of nature are among the legislation and implementation competencies of the **Federal Provinces**. The following legal situation applies to the federal provinces Upper Austria, Lower Austria and Vienna:

Table 4

Legislation of the Austrian Federal States

	Upper Austria	Lower Austria	Vienna
Building Law (Baurecht)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◆ Oö. Bauordnung 1994, LGBl. Nr. 66/1994 idF LGBl. 90/2013 ◆ Oö. Bautechnikgesetz 2013, LGBl. Nr. 35/2013 idF LGBl. Nr. 89/2014 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◆ NÖ Bauordnung 2014 (NÖ BO 2014); LGBl. für NÖ Nr. 1/2015, idF Nr. 37/2016 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◆ siehe Raumordnung
Regional Development (Raum-ordnung)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◆ Oö. Raumordnungs-gesetz 1994 (Oö. ROG 1994); LGBl. für Oö Nr. 114/1993 idF Nr. 69/2015 ◆ Oö. Landes-raumordnungs-programm 1998, LGBl. Nr. 72/1998 ◆ Oö. Umweltschutzgesetz 1996, LGBl. Nr. 84/1996 idF LGBl. Nr. 32/2016 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◆ NÖ Raumordnungsgesetz 2014 (NÖ ROG 2014); LGBl. für NÖ Nr. 3 /2015 ◆ NÖ Umweltschutzgesetz, LGBl. 8050-8 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◆ Wiener Stadtentwicklungs-, Stadtplanungs- und Baugesetzbuch (Bauordnung für Wien); LGBl. für Wien Nr. 11/1930 idF Nr. 8/2015
Nature Protection (Naturschutz)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◆ Oö. Natur- und Landschaftsschutz-gesetz 2001, LGBl. Nr. 129/2001 idF LGBl. Nr. 92/2014 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◆ NÖ. Naturschutzgesetz 2000, (NÖ NSchG 2000), LGBl. Nr. 87/00 idF LGBl. Nr. 38/2016 ◆ NÖ. Biosphärenpark Wienerwald Gesetz, LGBl. Nr. 60/06 ◆ Verordnung über die Landschaftsschutzgebiete LGBl. 5500/35-10 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◆ Gesetz mit dem das Wiener Naturschutzgesetz erlassen wird, LGBl. Nr. 45/1998 idF LGBl. Nr. 12/2006 ◆ Wiener Biosphärenpark-gesetz, LGBl. Nr. 47/2006

According to Article 56 of the Lower Austrian Building Regulations 2014, idf LGBl. No. 52/2017, in the external design of buildings attention must be paid to architecturally and culturally historic valuable buildings and areas and especially to designated and registered World Heritage Sites.

Resolution of the Federal Council of Austria of 20 July 2007

With acceptance of the resolution (E-222-BR/2007) of the Federal Council of 20 July 2007 (162/A(E)-BR/2007) *The Federal Government is requested within one year the project "World Heritage Donau Limes" to prepare and to apply to UNESCO for nomination in the World Heritage List.*

The new Government Program (2017 – 2022)

The new Government Program (2017 - 2022) of the Austrian Federal Government includes a number of points in the chapter "Art and Culture", which also apply to concerns of the Danube Limes, such as:

- ◆ Art and culture are also important elements of social cohesion. This is not only important for the challenges of integration. Dealing with the common cultural heritage - across the borders of federal states and regions - contributes significantly to the Austrian identity consciousness.
- ◆ Renewal of historic monuments by law: Preservation of the architectural heritage owned by the Republic and protection of the UNESCO World Heritage in Austria as an important attraction for tourists from home and abroad
- ◆ Review of the possibility of the Federal Government concerning the compliance of regional planning with international treaties
- ◆ The study of culture in education means, on the one hand, the theoretical transmission of knowledge and the awareness of our rich cultural heritage.

Local councils legislation

As the in a manner of speaking third level of the federal state, and as administrative bodies, the local councils play an important role, for example concerning zoning and development plans and in construction matters. All communities in the area of the nominated world heritage location have emphasised by votes in their local councils their support for the planned world heritage application and have declared their willingness to respect the core and buffer zones in all council planning and in particular with regard to zoning should the Danube Limes in Austria be admitted to the UNESCO world heritage list. This reflects Recommendation No. 56 of the Austrian Planning/Zoning Conference from April 2017 concerning “Reduction of land take, land management and active land policy”, which says that the preservation of valuable cultural assets as a central planning task in planning/zoning laws should be an aim not only for regional, but also for local planning.



Hirschleitengraben, watchtower (ID No 12)

4. Potential risks of impacts

None of the nominated component parts of the *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes (Western Segment)* experiences particular pressure for change on the basis of regional development plans, concepts for traffic, natural influences, nature catastrophes or tourism in a way that the proposed OUV could be damaged. However, in general the change of use of land due to construction and measures for infrastructure as well as in agriculture and forestry pose a threat to the property. Most of the measures mentioned in chapter 5.b and 5.c of the nomination dossier aim at reducing this endangering potential are based on the Monument Protection Act (DMSG) and the Environmental Impact Assessment Act (UVPG).

All component parts are protected through the Heritage Protection Law (highest national protection level). Additionally, there are instruments of protection in the hand of the communities, which support the general aims at an individual level. Most of the nominated sites are developed well in respect to tourism; in some cases the number of visitors is regulated due to the limited carrying capacity of the monuments. However, there is no particular threat through overuse. The following description summarizes the factors which are likely to affect or threaten the Outstanding Universal Value of a property.

4.1. Development pressure

SETTLEMENT

Legislation concerning local planning and the associated zoning plans is in Austria a responsibility of the federal regions (therefore different planning laws with different provisions concerning the content and the appearance of the plans including the wording of ordinances). On municipal level the so called zoning plan is developed (zoning plans are subject to the supervision of the regional government), which includes local council planning for the entire council area and is drawn up on the basis of the cadastral map. The plan attaches a label to each plot, which describes how it may be used (building land, green space/open land, traffic zone, other specification). The communities have to respect the existence of known monuments in their planning. The nominated component parts situated in settled areas in Austria are well respected in the communal plans, although small scale threats resulting from the necessity to connect existing buildings to water, gas, power, and sewage lines cannot be excluded. All underground works in the nominated property requires permission according to § 11 of the Austrian Heritage Protection Law.

MINING AND TRAFFIC/INFRASTRUCTURE

None of the nominated component parts in Austria are under threat of mining or surface extraction of minerals. Only Zwentendorf (ID No 26) is situated very close to a raw material mining area, but the mining activities and spatial extension are fixed in a mining plan which is approved and monitored by the public administration (Province of Lower Austria). Measures of traffic and infrastructure would require permission according to § 4 of the Austrian Heritage Protection Law, too.

AGRICULTURE

Sustainable agricultural cultivation, if it is maintained as it has been for a long time, in general will not further damage the remains that have existed under the ground for 1,000-1,500 years. A change in cultivation could pose a threat, though, if it is accompanied by disturbing the earth to a depth of more than 30 cm (e.g. planting grape vines or other special cultures), or if it involves the planting of vegetation with fundamentally different root systems (e.g. afforestation), if it breaks up the bonded ground surface and creates a danger of erosion (the ploughing of fields and pastures) or if it fundamentally alters the water consumption or chemical composition of the land (irrigation or chemical protection of plants). Several component parts around Enns (ID No 14) are situated agricultural land which is cultivated. Special agreements with the farmer ensure a sensitive ploughing (no deep ploughing) to minimize the impacts on the component parts. Intensive information and discussions with the farmers strengthen the awareness for the cultural heritage. A particular threat is erosion even in flat situations. Therefore the nominated areas under the plough need careful monitoring

FORESTRY

The majority of the component parts in Austria are not effected by regular forestry except the two watchtowers ID Nos 12 and 19. For these component parts in each case the forest development plan (based on forestry law, § 9) includes all measures in the surrounding. None of these measures affects the component parts. A close contact to the land owner/foresters is established.

TOURISM

Also a fairly intensive tourism exists along the Danube in Austria, but no particular threat can be made out as most of it is individual tourism by car and bicycle (cycle path along the river). The Danube Interpretation Framework DLIF (see annex), developed for Austria and Germany, attempts to direct that tourism in respect to the nominated component parts and the museums providing information about the component parts of the *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes (Western Segment)*.

4.2. Environmental pressures

FROST

None of the nominated component parts of the Austrian part of the Danube Limes are exposed in a way that frost poses a particular danger to their existence. Periodically monitoring of the sites by local site managers in accordance with the regulation of Forum Limes supports to minimize that risk.

AIR POLLUTION AND ACID RAIN

Air pollution that damages construction materials characteristically exerts its impact through moisture. Protection of the elements of the ruins against moisture also neutralizes most airborne threats. Acid rain has had an unfavorable effect on unprotected walls. Since the 1990s the amount of air pollutants was reduced continuously to a low level due to environmental protection measures and in part due to the decline of industrial production. Solely in cities and densely populated areas pollutants like nitrogen oxides, ejected by combustion engines and in particular Diesel-engines as well as coal-fired power stations, still have a fairly high level, although it is to be expected that this will diminish by the years

CLIMATE CHANGE

As a result of climate change freeze cycles or instances of radical daily temperature swings may become more unpredictable. Climate change primarily affects the water balance, so the incidence and damaging effect (erosion) of floods may increase in all sections of the Danube. Also, the level of the floods may increase leading to the flooding of nominated component parts which have never or only rarely be affected of flooding so far.

In the case of remains above ground the chance of damage endangering building materials due to temperature swings (erosion, cracking) may increase and supercell storms or microburst storms may become more frequent, thus the general reduction of the extent of air and soil pollution due to human activity is an ever more urgent task, since the remains cannot be protected, the prediction of these events can only aid living creatures and movable elements.

DAMAGING PLANTS (WEEDS, ROOTS, MOSS, LICHEN) AND VERMIN INFESTATIONS (HAMSTERS)

Animal and plant pests damage remains above and below the surface, although to differing degrees. Roots that extend deeper or animals that burrow may have a damaging impact on remains that are underground and that are generally better protected. They do not have an impact worthy of mention on the construction materials; instead they endanger the stratigraphy and the finds enclosed, therefore disturbing the original archaeological conditions. However, their impact is always limited. Similar to this, the damaging impact of birds that nest in the loess banks and animals that settle in the riverbed of the Danube is minor. The remains above the ground surface (even those that have been conserved) may be endangered by plants that have aerial roots, mosses and lichens through splitting and cracking effects. They can be controlled through monitoring and regular care.

4.3. Natural disasters and risk preparedness

FLOODING, INLAND INUNDATION (SURFACE WATERS)

The characteristic of the Danube causes problems with danger of floods. The prevention of water damage, protection against flooding, management of water supplies hydrographic and monitoring activities and official activities of water conservation in the area of the Danube Valley are performed by the national and regional water conservation departments during the course of their official activities as provided for in governmental decrees. Especially during the last 10 years very effective flood prevention measures were implemented (partly with mobile elements) along designated risk areas and this will be continued. Also a very effective forecasting system is installed and accompanied by a monitoring system to react within a very short time. Also the planning measures for flood protection are updated periodically by the public administration.

FIRES

Wildfires and forest fires do not represent a significant danger in Austria. Professional fire brigades in Linz and Vienna and a large number of volunteer fire brigades all over the country ensure a very high level of responsiveness and safety. The Danube University Krems, Department for Building and Environment - Center for Cultural Property Protection holds regular exercises with volunteer fire brigades in Lower Austria.

EARTHQUAKES, EROSION

The area of the Danube in Austria is not known for particular seismic activity according to the official information by the ZAMG – the area of the Danube has a very low risk of earthquakes, although there are indications that a seismic event caused considerable damage in Carnuntum in Late Antiquity (ID No 31). The Danube River has threatened the structures of the Danube Limes since their construction, or for nearly two thousand years. The section of the Danube that runs north-south has been gradually shifting to the west, away from the direction of the Earth's rotation. This process is slow, but water has washed the eastern side of many forts and watch towers into the Danube. The potential threat of erosion has been dealt with above under agriculture and climate change.

4.4. Responsible visitation at World Heritage sites

Most of the nominated sites are well developed for tourism, and the number of visitors are regulated with regard to the preservation of monuments (for example St. Laurenz, Römermuseum Wien). Not all of the nominated component parts in Austria are accessible to tourism, most provide in addition to guide books appropriate on-site information. A threat of tourist overuse is therefore currently ascertainable.

4.5. Other

Graffiti can sometimes occur in freely accessible sites, as well as vandalism. By relevant information, on-the-spot communication and awareness raising of residents and institutions surrounding the sites (e.g. tourist facilities) put a halt to greater impacts.

On the basis of the Hague Convention of 1954 with its protocols of 1954 and 1999 as the legal basis for the protection of cultural property, (currently) an evaluation of all component parts with regard to their endangerment (the deliberate destruction of cultural assets as a terrorist act, natural disasters such as flooding, and Man-made disasters) is running. This evaluation corresponds to a preparatory action to be carried out in peacetime together with the Austrian Armed Forces and gives an assessment of the value of the individual component parts.

4.6. Institutions concerned with prevention of risks

ICOMOS

ICOMOS (International Council on Monuments and Sites) works for the conservation and protection of cultural heritage places. It is the only global non-government organization of this kind, which is dedicated to promoting the application of theory, methodology, and scientific techniques to the conservation of the architectural and archaeological heritage. Its work is based on the principles enshrined in the 1964 International Charter on the Conservation and Restoration of Monuments and Sites (the Venice Charter).

The National Committee Austria supports the implementation of the World Heritage Convention with the following activities:

- ◆ Information about the monuments on the World Heritage List
- ◆ Preparation and organization of meetings / meetings / workshops
- ◆ Publication of conference results and relevant information from the work area of ICOMOS
- ◆ Cooperation with other National Committees as well as with relevant national bodies and institutions and international organizations

DANUBE UNIVERSITY KREMS, DEPARTMENT FOR BUILDING AND ENVIRONMENT ENTER FOR CULTURAL PROPERTY PROTECTION

The Center for Cultural Property applies a broad, coherent and practise-related approach. The legal stipulations in the fields of international and national law will be assessed and implemented following practical needs. Thanks to the close cooperation with the Center for Architectural Heritage and Infrastructure at the Department for Building and Environment the specific requirements and needs for cultural property in general and for UNESCO-World Heritage sites in particular can be met. The practical implementation of the cultural property protection will be assured through an efficient and meanwhile global network.

The Center maintains close relations with the CPP-units of the Austrian Armed Forces, with the European Research Centre for Book and Paper Conservation-Restoration, with museums, archives and libraries. Regular exchange of knowledge and experiences with NGOs, public institutions, UNESCO and with representatives of emergency-units assures a practical-related implementation. The team of the CPP-Center provides expertise and supports private entities, public institutions as well as international organisations through studies, legal assessments and it contributes regularly to conferences.

The Center organises lectures, master courses as well as summer-universities. These events do not only promote the protection of cultural property through disaster-management, but also contribute to the international dialogue among scholars, students and experts.



Tulln, horseshoe-shaped tower at the west side of the fort (ID No 27a)

BLUE SHIELD

The Blue Shield is the cultural equivalent of the Red Cross. It is the protective emblem specified in the 1954 Hague Convention (Convention for the Protection of Cultural Property in the Event of Armed Conflict) for marking cultural sites to give them protection from attack in the event of armed conflict. The Blue Shield network consists of organizations dealing with museums, archives, audiovisual supports, libraries, as well as monuments and sites. *The mission of all involved with Blue Shield is to work for the protection of the world's cultural heritage.* In support of the international initiative from Blue Shield on a local level a number of national committees of the Blue Shield are (being) formed.

Functions of Blue Shield:

- ◆ To promote the ratification and implementation of the Hague Convention and its protocols, with the emphasis on advocating BS's philosophy and principles.
- ◆ To encourage safeguarding and respect for cultural property especially by promoting risk preparedness.
- ◆ To train experts at national and regional level to prevent, control and recover from disasters.
- ◆ To act in an advisory capacity for the protection of endangered heritage.
- ◆ To consult and co-operate with other bodies including UNESCO, ICCROM and the International Committee of the Red Cross (ICRC).

The Austrian National Committee Blue Shield is a non-profit association and is guided by the International Committee of the Blue Shield (ICBS) and the Association of National Committees of the Blue Shield (ANCBS).

5. Management System

The World Heritage Site *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes (Western Segment)* is nominated as a serial transnational World Heritage Site. The three States Parties involved declared their aim to conserve the (proposed) Outstanding Universal Value (OUV) of this exceptional archaeological structure with all its nominated component parts with the “Joint declaration for running and expanding the nominated World Heritage Site *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes*” (see annex). These State Parties have to coordinate their management of the nominated World Heritage Site, each State Party is responsible for taking care of conservation and management of the property within its territory, in accordance with the provisions of the World Heritage Convention, the Operational Guidelines for the Implementation of the World Heritage Convention (“Operational Guidelines”) and the decisions of the World Heritage Committee.

So each State Party has to develop an appropriate management system expressed through a regularly updated Management Plan for the identification, protection, conservation and sustainable use of the respective component parts - the national management system addresses also the interests and involvement of all stakeholders and the sustainable economic use of the property.

It follows the proposed system of exchange and cooperation concerning all World Heritage matters and the management systems established so far.

5.1. International level

For the nominated component parts of the *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes (Western Segment)*, the States Parties have agreed on an integrated management system consisting of two closely cooperating and interacting bodies (fig. 5.1):

- ◆ The Intergovernmental Committee (IGC DL) is established in order to coordinate overall management of the nominated *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes* World Heritage Site at an international level. Its Terms of Reference are approved unanimously by all the States Parties involved in the nomination of the *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes*.
- ◆ The Management Group for the nominated *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes* World Heritage Site (MG DL) is made up of those directly responsible for the site management of the currently inscribed sections of the nominated *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes*. The MG DL provides the primary mechanism for sharing best practice in relation to nominated *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes* World Heritage Site.

The current States Parties involved are the Federal Republic of Germany, Austria and the Slovak Republic.

COMMON MANAGEMENT AIMS

The aim of the participating States Parties is, to create a World Heritage Site for the whole of the Danube Limes, as evidence of a specialised frontier of one of the world’s greatest civilisation and as a symbol of a common heritage.

Responsibility for the management of individual parts of the nominated World Heritage Site *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes* must rest with the individual States Parties and be carried out by each in accordance with their national legislative and management system.

Equally it is essential that individual parts of the nominated property are managed within an overall framework of co-operation to achieve common standards of identification, recording, research,

protection, conservation, management, presentation and understanding of the *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes*, above and below ground, in an interdisciplinary manner and within a sustainable framework. Envisioned is the enhancement of respect for the surviving remains of the frontier and the transmission of these remains to future generations. We acknowledge that the *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes* and its associations as a common feature will bring people together. This will be achieved also through improved public knowledge, utilising modern information systems. Internationally, goals over the next few years are:

- ◆ a common vision for the whole *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes*;
- ◆ increasing public awareness and scientific exchange over the States Parties involved;
- ◆ the creation of a web site;
- ◆ the linking of national data bases;
- ◆ the development of transnational programs to raise awareness;
- ◆ the development of common standards for recording, conservation, management and display;
- ◆ the development of research framework for the *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes*;
- ◆ support and advice to the States Parties involved in the *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes (eastern segment)*.

Frontiers of the Roman Empire The Danube Limes

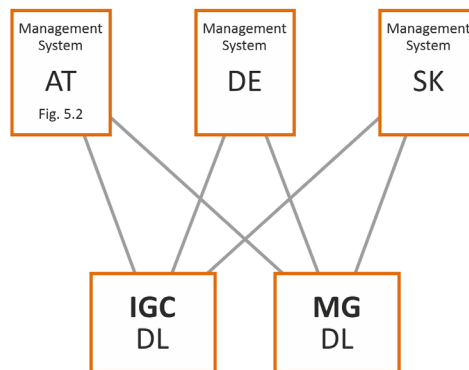


Fig. 5.1: Management system of the *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes (Western Segment)*

MANAGEMENT STRATEGY

The strategy for implementing the management plan and the common objectives is to develop an appropriate system for a management relating to the different legal and administrative levels with its specific competences. This strategy therefore involves establishing a three – level master plan, covering international, national as well as regional / local actions and measures. With this management strategy, each player fulfils its legal and administrative tasks and may benefit from – and participate in – the coordination network within the nomination as a whole. At each level, adequate measures and actions are developed and implemented. At international level, the work is focused on the development of a common management framework, and also standards (for example, for sustainable visiting concepts) that should be applied by all State Parties involved. At local level the concerns are connected to the technical details of interventions for protection. The three level network will also ensure that best practices are accessible for site managers and decision makers as well. Nationally, the management systems for each national part of the property would need to address, within the overall framework set out above, identification and definition of the component parts' significance, as well as their conservation, access to them, the interests and involvement of all appropriate organisations and communities from national to local level, and their sustainable economic use. The management plans within each State Party's existing legislative and management systems are developed for the nominated property concerning the identification, protection, conservation and sustainable use of the nominated component parts.

With the “Joint declaration for running and expanding the nominated World Heritage Site *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes*” the States Parties declare their commitment to coordinate their management of the nominated World Heritage Site. They

- ◆ look forward to continuing their cooperation for the benefit and success of the *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes*
- ◆ will be guided by the Operational Guidelines and decisions of the World Heritage Committee relating to the *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes*
- ◆ recognize the importance of – and need for – coordinated management and monitoring as the foundation for practical actions between and in all participating States Parties
- ◆ agree to continue collaboration in order to identify, protect, conserve, present and transmit to future generations this common heritage of proposed Outstanding Universal Value.

This joint declaration (see annex) describes the terms of reference of the Intergovernmental Committee for the *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes* (IGC DL):

1. Intergovernmental Committee for the nominated *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes* World Heritage Site (IGC DL)
2. Membership
3. Objectives
4. Procedures
5. Tasks
6. Commencement and amendments

Membership of the IGC DL consists of the delegations of the States Parties, which care for a section of the *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes* currently nominated as World Heritage Site. The delegations are composed of at least one member of the respective administrations (ministry) in charge of the national sections of the nominated World Heritage Site as well as at least one expert in archaeology or heritage. Delegations may not exceed 5 members.

The IGC DL is chaired by one of the States Parties members of the IGC DL. The Chair will provide secretariat support for organizing meetings, disseminating information to IGC DL members, preparing documents for meetings, recording the IGC DL's discussions and coordinating common actions. The Chairmanship changes every other year on February 1, beginning in 2020. It is allocated according to the alphabetical order of the names of the States Parties in English, beginning with Austria.

The IGC DL meets at least once a year. After consulting other members, the Chair of the IGC DL convenes the meetings and decides on the agenda. An extraordinary meeting may be requested by any State Party member of the IGC DL at any time, in writing to the Chair. The Chair will then decide whether and when to convene an extraordinary meeting, after consultation with other members of the IGC DL.

5.2. Management System in Austria

Different levels of government – national, regional and local – and their specialist departments are responsible for the preservation and sustainable development of the world heritage sites. Different control and regulation systems will take effect through regional cooperation and the participation of civil society.

National level: The Austrian Federal Ministry for Arts, Culture, the Public Service and Sport (BMKÖS), Department IV/4, Unit IV/4/a: Material UNESCO World Heritage is responsible for the coordination of the management of the Austrian world heritage sites. The coordination of the Austrian world heritage sites by the “Austrian World Heritage Sites Conference” has been supported since September 2016 by a newly created bureau at the Austrian UNESCO commission. The chair of the “Austrian World Heritage Sites Conference” is held by the World Heritage section IV/4/a at the Federal Ministry for Arts, Culture, the Public Service and Sport. The protection of monuments in national Austrian law is administered by the Federal Monuments Authority (BDA) and its regional departments.

Regional level: The World Heritage Danube Limes is supported by the Upper Austrian Regional Government, Directorate for Culture, by the Lower Austrian Regional Government, Division for Culture, Science and Teaching, Art and Culture department (K1), and by the Department for Culture of Vienna City Council (MA 7).

The regional departments also support local councils in the implementation of local and regional strategies with expertise and subventions.

Local level: The participating towns and communities regulate local planning in their own areas, coordinate the relevant actions of local and private planning agencies and ensure that they conform with zoning aims. These aims are reflected in the local zoning/planning programmes, which are based on the local council zoning plans. Local councils are obliged to develop and implement by ordinance both sets of plans.

The core responsibilities within these three levels

- ◆ Federal state responsibility: protection of the historic monuments – the immediate protection of the individual component parts of the Danube Limes arises from the Monument Protection Act (BGBl. Nr. 533/1923 in the version of BGBl.Nr. 92/2013); also the Environmental Protection Act (UVP-G 2009) concerns the World Heritage site
- ◆ Building law including townscape protection, some parts of local planning and the protection of nature are among the legislation and implementation competencies of the **provinces** (Upper Austria, Lower Austria and Vienna).
- ◆ As the third level of the federal republic, and as administrative bodies, the local councils play an important role, for example concerning zoning and development plans and in construction matters.

Best practice – resolution of the municipalities:

All communities in the area of the nominated world heritage location have emphasised by votes in their local councils their support for the planned world heritage application and have declared their willingness to respect the core and buffer zones in all council planning and in particular with regard to zoning should the Danube Limes in Austria be admitted to the UNESCO world heritage list.

5.2.1. TASKS

According to the "higher level" requirements of the management plan, this should also concern the following points at national level:

- ◆ safeguarding and preservation of the existing archaeological property;
- ◆ planning the conservation and development of protective measures;
- ◆ preservation of the general character of the components;
- ◆ an effective monitoring system
- ◆ attempt to reactivate historical connections;
- ◆ planning for the scientific investigation;
- ◆ the commitment to involve local communities;
- ◆ the commitment to achieve appropriate balance between conservation, access, the interests of local communities, owners and sustainable economic use of the component parts;
- ◆ the commitment to coordinate activities and participation in the co-ordination mechanisms;
- ◆ to preserve the vitality of the different landscapes at the Danube Limes through forward-looking and integrated development;
- ◆ make use of public and private resources to increase the protection and the development of the component parts and the landscapes at the Danube Limes;
- ◆ develop measures to enhance the component parts in their appearance;
- ◆ the improvement of accessibility of the component parts;
- ◆ ensuring that the economic advantages of tourism at the Danube Limes are also in the advantage of the local population;
- ◆ extending the education and information offering regarding the components specifically, and also the World Heritage in general on a regional, national and international level;
- ◆ intention to develop partnership and compliance with those who are concerned public or private with the Danube Limes, its component parts and their surroundings.

This management plan has to be understood as regulatory framework, in which both concrete statements regarding future handling of the property as well as perspectives regarding long-term development are laid down. It's not meant as an inflexible proposal; rather it should be interpreted as an evolving document and will be revised and updated on a regular basis of every seven years.



Carnuntum, aerial view with interpretation (ID No 31)

5.2.2. ORGANIZATIONAL FRAMEWORK

The organisational basis of the Management System in Austria is shown in the following organigram (fig. 5.2), which also reflects the cooperation between the central state (Federal Ministry for Arts, Culture, the Public Service and Sport, BMKÖS) and the participating regions (Upper Austria/OÖ, Lower Austria/NÖ and Vienna/W).

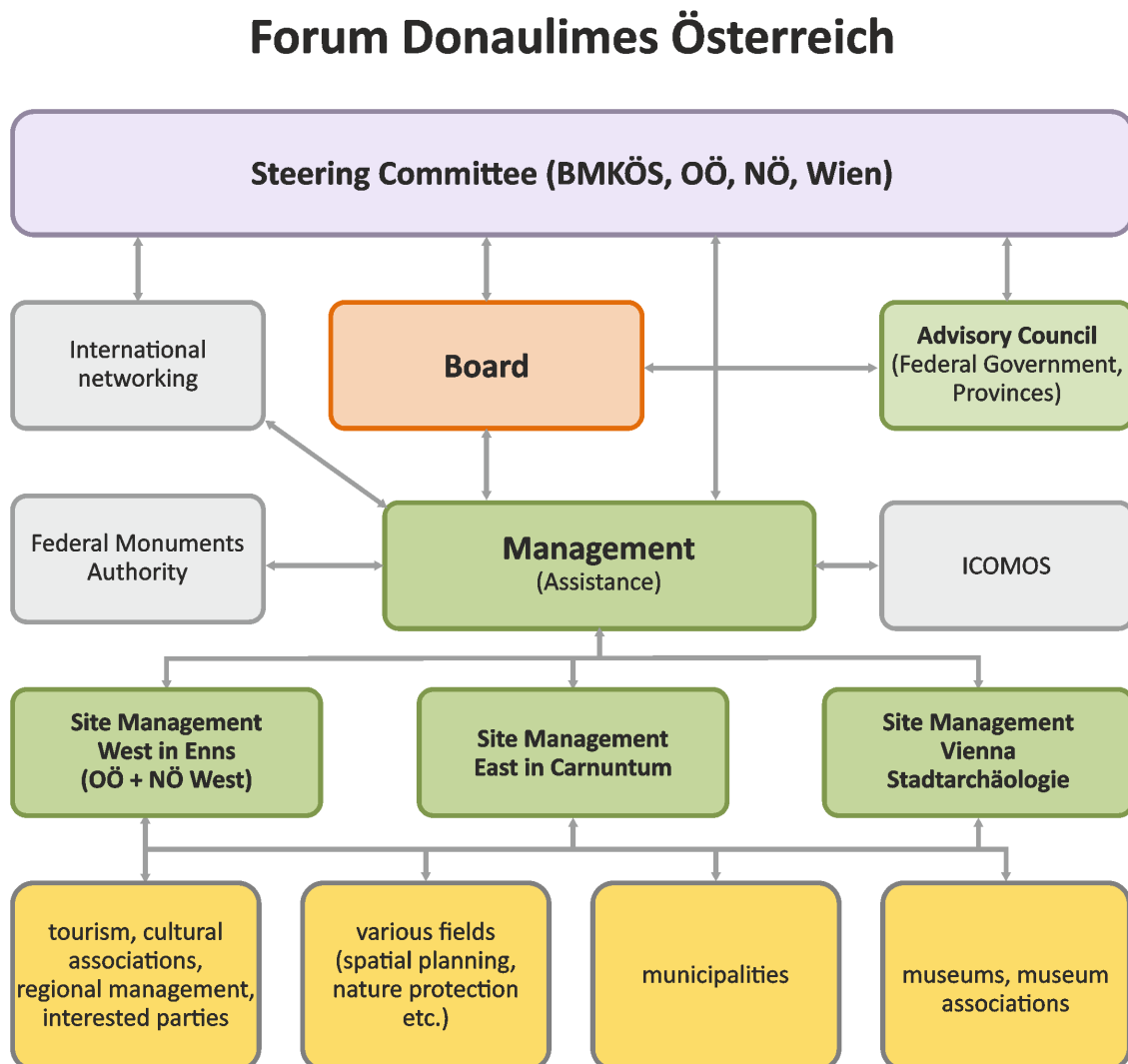


Fig. 5.2: Organigram “Forum Limes Österreich” (*BMKÖS: Austrian Federal Ministry for Arts, Culture, the Public Service and Sport, OÖ: Upper Austrian Regional Government, NÖ: Lower Austrian Regional Government, Wien: Vienna City Council)

This organizational structure is currently in a project stage and will be adapted and implemented step by step.

The Steering Committee is composed of representatives of Representatives of the federal state and the federal provinces:

- ◆ Department IV/4 (Monument Protection, Building Culture and Art Restitution Affairs) of the Austrian Federal Ministry for Arts, Culture, the Public Service and Sport
- ◆ Department of Art and Culture of the Office of the Upper Austrian Provincial Government
- ◆ Department of Art and Culture of the Office of the Lower Austrian Provincial Government
- ◆ Viennese municipal department 7 / Vienna City Archeology.

The Federal Monuments Authority is no member of the Steering Committee because of the authority activities.

Objectives

- ◆ Preservation and protection of World Heritage components in Austria
- ◆ Strengthening the general awareness of the UNESCO World Heritage Site Danube Limes in Austria and its associated sites
- ◆ Measures to achieve the common overarching objectives
- ◆ Coordination of development and research activities

Tasks

- ◆ Composition of the board
- ◆ Creates contributions to collaboration agreements
- ◆ Clarifies budgetary framework
- ◆ Setzt die operative Ebene mit Vorstand ein
- ◆ Deploys the operational level with the board
- ◆ Set up the advisory board
- ◆ Responsible for the overall strategy of the Austrian section of the Danube Limes
- ◆ Approves action plans of the countries
- ◆ Networking with the national and international research community
- ◆ Clarifies representatives for the higher levels
- ◆ Guarantee of basic financing
- ◆ Supports application of third-party funds

The Board is made up of experienced experts from various specialist fields (archeology, tourism, research, administration etc.). The composition is task of the Steering Committee and dependent on the organization form (association, GmbH, ...)

Tasks

1. National management of parts of the projected and future registered UNESCO world heritage site of the Danube Limes in the sense of an advancing planning
2. Control of the implementation of the management plan
3. Impulses for the strategy development
4. Conception and initiation of national and international research projects on this topic
5. Appointment and dismissal of the management, the other personnel of the management and the site manager
6. Review of management reports and forwarding to the Steering Committee
7. Admission, exclusion and cancellation of association members
8. Appointment of members of the Advisory Board
9. Further tasks in accordance with association law (general meeting, clearance of accounts etc.)

Advisory Council

Composition

- ◆ Representatives of federal and provincial level
- ◆ At meetings of the advisory board, at least one member of the board has to participate (in the case of votes, the board has one vote)
- ◆ The management should be present at the meetings (for information), but without voting rights
- ◆ The specialist expertise of the BDA should be available, as well as further expertise from specialist committees (if required).

Tasks

- ◆ Support of the Board and the Steering Committee
- ◆ Support of the approval of the action plans of the federal provinces
- ◆ Support for networking with the national and international research community
- ◆ Proposals for research priorities and scientific projects

Management and Site Management

The management is responsible for the overall coordination of all sections and sites and is supported by the site managements. The site manager should be located at the provincial departments.

The specialist expertise of the BDA should be available, as well as further expertise from further specialist committees (if required).

According to the organigram 5.2 the following structure is envisaged:

- ◆ 1 General Manager, 2 Site Managers, 1 Assistance
- ◆ A Limes information center in Enns with its own office (public access) will be set up, as well as in Carnuntum
- ◆ A fixed office day for Lower Austria (Mautern / Krems) is to be provided.

The "Site Managers" should be assigned at the provincial departments. A first proposal looks like this:

- ◆ Western section (Upper Austria and Lower Austria west to Zeiselmauer): 1 Site Manager (in Upper Austria, also for Linz and Enns) – location in Enns, fixed office- and consultation day in Lower Austria
- ◆ Section East (Lower Austria: Klosterneuburg to Carnuntum): 1 Site Manager (location in Carnuntum)
- ◆ Vienna: is perceived via the Vienna City Archaeology and the Wien Museum, as well as the scientific networking.

Task profile of the Management

- ◆ Overall coordination of all sections of the Danube Limes in Austria (see also Site Management Tasks)
- ◆ Organization of the current documentation and control of the conservation status of the World Heritage Sites
- ◆ Implementation of the mandatory monitoring
- ◆ Preparation of the annual management report
- ◆ Initiation, organization and execution of research activities in consultation with the board and the advisory council of the Forum
- ◆ Regional and supra-regional public relations work to establish the UNESCO World Heritage Site, marketing, development and implementation of targeted communication programs
- ◆ Development and implementation of mediation strategies and programs
- ◆ Organization of information and communication for the public
- ◆ Regular exchange of information with museums and feral provinces, etc.
- ◆ Participation in conferences, lectures, popular scientific publications
- ◆ Cooperation in cross-border projects

Task profile of the Site Managements

- ◆ Co-organization of the ongoing documentation and control of the conservation status of World Heritage sites, this includes
 - Early detection of potential hazards
 - Planning, order and coordination of the monitoring in consultation with the BDA and the management on the basis of performance agreements (execution independently or if necessary by external service providers)
 - Planning, order and coordination of protective measures in consultation with the management (implementation independently or, if necessary, by external service providers)
- ◆ Assistance in the organization and execution of research activities in consultation with the management and the advisory council
- ◆ Supporting the management in regional and national public relations efforts to establish the UNESCO World Heritage Site
- ◆ Support of the management in the implementation of mediation projects for the establishment of the UNESCO World Heritage Site

- ◆ Ensuring of an uncomplicated and direct information and communication for the regional public (provinces, municipalities, regional managements, owners and other interested parties, such as neighbors or tourism, etc.) as the primary local contact point
- ◆ Regular reporting to the management

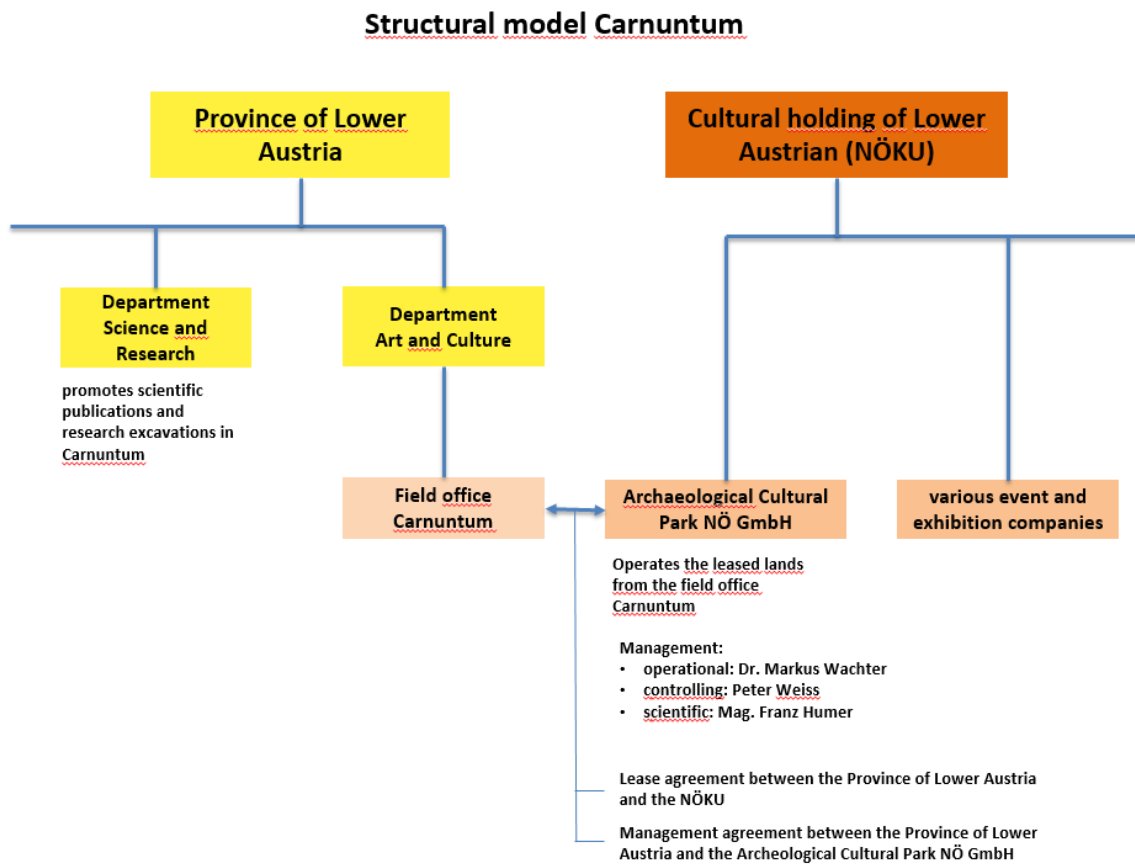


Fig. 5.3: Special case Carnuntum: Structure model

Special case Carnuntum (ID No 31)

Carnuntum, as the largest archaeological landscape occupies in Austria a special position due to the size, the scientific program, the affiliated museums, the reconstructions and the number of visitors.

The scientific work and all substantive measures in Carnuntum are carried out by the Province of Lower Austria, which is the owner of the properties and the archaeological collection (located in the state administration since 1938). The foundation for further culture history usage was laid in 1996 with the founding of the Carnuntum Archaeological Park, whose management was transferred to a semi-public non-profit operating company in the sense of a public private partnership structure. This GmbH (AKP = Archaeological Cultural Park NÖ GmbH) is part of the outsourced cultural holding in Lower Austria (NÖKU = Niederösterreichische Kulturwirtschaft) and autonomously. The field office Carnuntum of the Department of Art and Culture of the Province of Lower Austria is responsible for basic scientific research, the protection and preservation of the archaeological ground monument, as well as the publication of the results. Exhibitions at the Museum Carnuntinum are funded by the AKP, but curated by the Province of Lower Austria. Presentation activities in the exposed archaeological monuments are also funded by the AKP, but implementation requires the approval of the Province of Lower Austria and is permanently monitored for observance of the preservation criteria.

The AKP is responsible for all management agendas in the context of a comprehensive site management, such as the organization of the entire visitor operation, human resources for this area, financial management, facility management, mediation, marketing, public relations and sponsorship. However, the AKP may not carry out its own scientific projects without the approval of the Province of Lower Austria, which could affect the integrity of the archaeological monument. The human resources and the content-related tasks in the area of science and conservation are solely up to the responsibility of the Province. The management structure of AKP consists of two managing directors and one scientific director. The operative managing director is provided by the AKP, the commercial managing director, who is primarily responsible for controlling tasks, is sent by the holding company to the GmbH (AKP). The scientific director is sent by the Province of Lower Austria to the GmbH.

5.2.3. FINANCING

A mixed funding ratio between the federal state (Federal Ministry for Arts, Culture, the Public Service and Sport) and the federal provinces (Upper Austria, Lower Austria, Vienna) will be used for the financing of the management of the Danube Limes. General measures for the protection and maintenance of ground monuments are defrayed from the budget of the Federal Monuments Authority (Bundesdenkmalamt). For individual projects, there are mixed funding schemes from project funds and funding by the Austrian Federal Ministry for Arts, Culture, the Public Service and Sport (BMKÖS), as well as funding by the federal provinces and municipalities. The candidature *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes (Western Segment)* for UNESCO World Heritage is promoted by the Federal Ministry for Arts, Culture, the Public Service and Sport.

For extensive research projects and basic research, there are funding options on national level through the Austrian Science Fund (FWF). The purpose of the FWF is to support the ongoing development of Austrian science and basic research at a high international level.

Documentation and inventorisation works of archaeological find spots are executed mainly by the province archaeology (Upper and Lower Austria) and the Vienna City Archaeology, but also by the universities, supported by NGOs or non-university organisations.

The trans-border nature of the Danube Limes means that it will be possible to apply to different EU funding programmes.

A specific, several years long finance plan applies to Carnuntum, which is part of the budget of the federal Province of Lower Austria.

The 2018 Upper Austrian State exhibition “The return of the legion” with locations in Oberranna, Schlögen and Enns aims to document the historic importance of the Danube Limes in Austria on the one hand and life on the Limes on the other. It will take place on a decentralised basis, involving several historic sites and implementing very different measures there. The scientific accompaniment of the project is guaranteed. The costs will be partly covered by the cultural budget of the federal Province of Upper Austria, other costs will occur for construction activities.

5.2.4. STAFF AND RELATED ADVISORY INSTITUTIONS

1) Scientific and administrative level

The distribution of power between the federal level and the regional shapes responsibility for the protection of monuments. The Federal Monuments Authority with its highly competent expert team, including the Departments of Upper Austria and Lower Austria with their specialists, is active in archaeology, restoration, conservation and related sciences. Guided by heritage protection law, they supervise frequent, careful protective and maintenance conservation activities. This takes place in cooperation with the regional heads of archaeology and with Vienna City Archaeology.

Carnuntum, as the largest archaeological landscape in Austria – is looked after by its own specialist team. In addition, there are town archaeologists in Linz and Enns in Upper Austria and in Traismauer in Lower Austria.

Individual projects involve cooperation with relevant specialist institutions and/or external experts as required. Close cooperation with research institutions, e.g. the Institute for the Study of Ancient Culture of the Austrian Academy of Science, the Ludwig Boltzmann Institute for Archaeological Prospection and Virtual Archaeology and the University of Vienna with their intensive research in and around Carnuntum based on the Archaeological Park have produced excellent results lately. The cooperation with further research institutions and department of the universities is being considered.

A close contact between the Danube University Krems – Center for Cultural Property Protection and the Federal Ministry for Arts, Culture, the Public Service and Sport concerns a project-related cooperation with the focus on:

- ◆ Development of strategic concepts
- ◆ Customer for impact assessments on world heritage sites
- ◆ Scientific studies related to world heritage sites

The Center organizes lectures, master courses as well as summer-universities. These events do not only promote the protection of cultural property through disaster-management, but also contribute to the international dialogue among scholars, students and experts.

2) Management and Site Management

According the fig. 5.2 (organigram „Forum Limes Österreich“) the following structure is envisaged:

- ◆ 1 General Manager, 2 Site Managers, 1 Assistance
- ◆ A Limes information center in Enns with its own space (public access) will be set up, as well as in Carnuntum
- ◆ A fixed office day for Lower Austria (Mautern / Krems) is to be provided



Enns, lime kilns during the excavations 2016/17 (ID No 14e)

3) ICOMOS

ICOMOS works for the conservation and protection of cultural heritage places. It is the only global non-government organization of this kind, which is dedicated to promoting the application of theory, methodology, and scientific techniques to the conservation of the architectural and archaeological heritage. Its work is based on the principles enshrined in the 1964 International Charter on the Conservation and Restoration of Monuments and Sites (the Venice Charter).

ICOMOS is a network of experts that benefits from the interdisciplinary exchange of its members, among which are architects, historians, archaeologists, art historians, geographers, anthropologists, engineers and town planners. The members of ICOMOS contribute to improving the preservation of heritage, the standards and the techniques for each type of cultural heritage property: buildings, historic cities, cultural landscapes and archaeological sites. The National Committee brings together individual and institutional members and offer them a framework for discussion and an exchange of information, it provides a forum where individuals and representatives of institutions concerned with the conservation, protection, rehabilitation and enhancement of architectural heritage can meet to exchange information and views on principles and practices in the field.

The National Committee Austria should support the implementation of the World Heritage concerning the management of the future World Heritage Site *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes (Western Segment)* with the following activities:

- ◆ Cooperation with the local site managers in the field of monitoring
- ◆ Advice and assistance in the development of proper safeguarding measures
- ◆ Advice in the assessment of planning tools
- ◆ Special advice in sensitive individual cases affecting the property.

6. Specific measures – action plan

6.1. Challenges

Creation of a catalog of measures to meet effectively the challenges described in the nomination dossier:

- ◆ Long-term challenge 1: Physical protection of the archaeological sites of the *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes (Western Segment)*
- ◆ Long-term challenge 2: Development pressures
- ◆ Long-term challenge 3: Intensification of tourism
- ◆ Long-term challenge 4: Natural disasters / natural deterioration of the component parts
- ◆ Long-term challenge 5: Archaeological research and conservation of sites

Measures necessary at different levels, use of the respective instruments:

- ◆ National level: monument conservation, environment protection
- ◆ Provincial level: regional planning, nature protection
- ◆ Municipal level: zoning plan, building regulation

6.2. Action plan

Organizational measures

- ◆ Implementation Forum Donaulimes Österreich:
 - Appointment board, management, site managers (recruitment, rules of procedure, etc.)
 - Implementation (preparation) of the offices (clarifications on provincial level) including interim solutions
- ◆ Information for all stakeholder:
 - Municipalities, museums, tourist organizations etc.
- ◆ Update database (basis of the nomination der Nominierung)
- ◆ Integration of all information in a GIS in cooperation with the GIS of the provinces
- ◆ Development of the budget plan

Best practice:

Data management and thematic GIS applications of the Vienna City Archeology and the federal Provinces of Lower Austria and Upper Austria

Protection of the components respectively the component parts

- ◆ National monument protection conservation concept for the Danube Limes
 - Creation of a detailed measures plan incl. priorities
 - Definition of monitoring indicators
- ◆ Information to the provinces and municipalities
- ◆ Joint creation of an implementation plan

Contributions to the development programs of the regional planning

- ◆ Spatial planning, building regulation
 - Workshop with spatial planners and monument protection authority concerning impacts (creation handbook)
- ◆ Agriculture and forestry
 - Definition of measures concerning the protection of the component parts
 - Protective or visual measures for the forest development plan

Best practice:

Agreements in Enns with agriculture: deep ploughing is not allowed.

Enhancing sustainable tourism

- ◆ Setup / update website
- ◆ Institutionalization of the information for the municipalities
- ◆ Creation detailed plan for implementation interpretation framework
 - Adaptation regarding cooperation with DE and SK
 - Start of implementation of the first measures
- ◆ Collaboration agreement with Danube tourism (all three countries)
- ◆ Workshop with tourism as an opportunity for the Danube Limes
- ◆ Development of a handbook to prevent damage to the monuments by tourism
- ◆ Compilation of all tourist activities to the Danube Limes (database)

Natural disasters / natural deterioration of the component parts

- ◆ Creation of a manual
- ◆ Cooperation with the Danube University

Best practice:

Danube University Krems – Department for Building and Environment, Center for Cultural Property Protection: this Center organizes lectures, master courses as well as summer-universities. These events do not only promote the protection of cultural property through disaster-management, but also contribute to the international dialogue among scholars, students and experts.

Institutionalization of a national platform for Research Framework

- ◆ Establishment of a platform with the research institutions
- ◆ Periodic information exchange
- ◆ Action plan (medium term) in coordination with overall research activities

Regular evaluation of the management plan (every 7 years)

6.2.1 Action plan 2019–2025 / Specific measures and actions for the nominated component parts of The Danube Limes in Austria

All nominated component parts in Austria are registered archaeological sites and protected at the highest level based on the national Monuments Protection Act (Denkmalschutzgesetz) that applies equally in all of Austria. Every measure carried out at one of these sites needs the permission from the Austrian Federal Monuments Authority / FMA (Bundesdenkmalamt) and has to follow the Guidelines for Archaeological Interventions. In addition to this, all documentation according to the guidelines has to be sent to the Federal Monuments Authority where it is archived. A summary of the measures has to be published in the annual “Fundberichte aus Österreich” (*Find Reports from Austria*). Members of the Departments for Archaeology in the Federal State of Upper Austria, Lower Austria and Vienna in consultation with the Federal Monuments Authority perform on-site inspections.

Additionally to this, specific management issues related to education, information, presentation, communication and visualization partially are already part of the existing programs of the regional museums and cultural agendas of the local communities. Following these role models, equal measures shall be implemented for those sites that are not part of museums or other institutions providing accessibility and on site information. The future national site management of The Danube Limes will coordinate and execute these activities together with the already established managing units (such as State Museums, Departments of State Archaeology, municipal and private initiatives).

The following summary action plan indicates individual management measures and actions for each component part as of 2018 and ongoing:

ID No	Component part	Advised Measures / Actions	Time-frame	Resources / Authorities
	General Issues related to all Component Parts	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Publication of the Thematic Study “Frontiers of the Roman Empire” by Phoibos Edition Vienna • Establishment of a national Management Structure • Establishment of a National Site Management: Headquarter based (most likely) in Carnuntum; local Site Managers shall be based in Upper Austria and Lower Austria West • Community Workshops “The Danube Limes – World Heritage and local planning” • Elaboration of a common information system including without limitation: visualization tools based on the model of the tools used at current State Exhibition of Upper Austria “The Return of the Legion” (i.a. stereoscopes, information on the websites of the Museums related to the Danubelimes; on-site information boards, booklets available on site and on site visualisation (videos) wherever possible). 	May 2019 2019 2019 / 2020 2019 /2020 Starting 2019; from then on step by step including regular adjustment	Federal Chancellery Federal Chancellery, the State Administrations of Upper Austria, Lower Austria and Vienna, representatives of the Communities, ICOMOS Austria, Federal Monuments Authority (FMA)
10	Oberanna – Kleinkastell	<p><i>Monitoring:</i> Annual visual inspection</p> <p><i>Conservation:</i> The property is well preserved and protected by a shelter open for public access since the opening of the State Exhibition of Upper Austria.</p> <p>Specific measures to safeguard the property are implemented constantly. At present: implementation of permanent measures to safeguard the Roman wall plaster of the western tower.</p> <p><i>Research:</i> the site is part of the State Exhibition of Upper</p>	permanent 2018 and permanent 2019 2018 to 2020	State Museum of Upper Austria State Museum of Upper Austria State Museum of Upper Austria State Museum of

ID No	Component part	Advised Measures / Actions	Time-frame	Resources / Authorities
		Austria. Research for the preparation of the exhibition was carried out by the Federal State Museum of Upper Austria and <i>will be continued</i> , as the site is a permanent part of the State Museum of Upper Austria and research related to the Roman Limes is a focus of the regular scientific work of the State Museum		Upper Austria
		<i>Education/Interpretation:</i> The site is part of the State Exhibition of Upper Austria 2018 “The Return of the Legion” (270.322 Visitors on all locations in 2018). Various activities accompany the exhibition; a catalogue provides comprehensive information on the exhibition. Interpretation will continue in the framework of the museum program.	regularly	State Museum of Upper Austria
		<i>Communication:</i> Reports on activities and / or research results are published on the website of the State Museum of Upper Austria,	regularly	State Museum of Upper Austria
		in the “Find reports of Austria”	annual	FMA
		and in “Sonius” (journal on archaeological news from Upper Austria)	twice a year	Association for Archaeology in Upper Austria
11a	Schlögen - Vicus	<i>Monitoring:</i> Annual visual inspection	permanent	State Museum of Upper Austria
		<i>Conservation:</i> The well-preserved remains of the Roman bath are protected by a shelter carried out in preparation of the the State Exhibition of Upper Austria 2018 “The Return of the Legion”.	permanent	State Museum of Upper Austria
		<i>Research:</i> Recent research work for the preparation of the exhibition was carried out by the Federal State Museum of Upper Austria and will be continued, as the site is part of the State Museum of Upper Austria and research related to the Roman Limes is a focus of the regular scientific work of the State Museum.	2018 to 2020 regularly	State Museum of Upper Austria
		<i>Education/Interpretation:</i> The site is part of the State Exhibition of Upper Austria 2018 “The Return of the Legion” A catalogue provides comprehensive information on the exhibition. The site is accessible for the public. Interpretation and information will continue in the framework of the museum program.	2018-2020 regularly	State Museum of Upper Austria
		<i>Communication:</i> Reports on activities and / or research results on the website of the State Museum of Upper Austria,	regularly	State Museum of Upper Austria
		in the “Find reports of Austria”	annual	FMA
		and in “Sonius” (journal on archaeological news from Upper Austria)	twice a year	Association for Archaeology in Upper Austria
11b	Schlögen- Kastell	<i>Monitoring:</i> Annual visual inspection	permanent	State Museum of Upper Austria
		<i>Conservation:</i> The remains are well preserved and partly visible. The property is situated in a parkland next to the	permanent	State Museum of Upper Austria

ID No	Component part	Advised Measures / Actions	Time-frame	Resources / Authorities
		Vicus / Roman Bath. Conservation and preservation takes place parallel to the neighboring Vicus.		
		<i>Research:</i> the site is part of the State Exhibition of Upper Austria. Research for the preparation of the exhibition was carried out by the Federal State Museum of Upper Austria and will be continued, as the site is part of the State Museum of Upper Austria and research related to the Roman Limes is a focus of the regular scientific work of the State Museum	2018 to 2020	State Museum of Upper Austria
		<i>Education/Interpretation:</i> The site is part of the State Exhibition of Upper Austria 2018 "The Return of the Legion" (270.322 Visitors on all locations in 2018). A catalogue provides comprehensive information on the exhibition. Interpretation will continue in the framework of the museum program.	permanent	State Museum of Upper Austria
		<i>Communication:</i> Reports on activities and / or research results on the website of the State Museum of Upper Austria, in the "Find reports of Austria"	regularly	
		and in "Sonus" (journal on archaeological news from Upper Austria)	annual	FMA
			twice a year	Association for Archaeology in Upper Austria
12	Hirschleitengraben - Wachturm	<i>Monitoring:</i> Annual visual inspection	permanent	Site Management / State Dept. for Archaeology of Upper Austria
		<i>Conservation:</i> The property is well preserved and a listed monument according to the national monuments protection act; hence, any intervention without permission by the FMA is punishable.	permanent	
		<i>Research:</i> research takes place within the research framework being part of the national site management	regularly	Research Framework
		<i>Education/Interpretation:</i> The site is visible, accessible, and included in the Guide "The Roman Limes in Austria. Guide to archaeological monuments" (2015). Specific measures to enhance visualization and interpretation of the property shall be implemented by the national site management of the Danubelimes (i.a. stereoscopes, online information via the websites of the State Museum and the Site Management)	permanent	Site Management
		<i>Communication:</i> Reports on activities and / or research results on the website of the State Museum of Upper Austria, in the "Find reports of Austria"	regularly	State Museum of Upper Austria
		and in "Sonus" (journal on archaeological news from Upper Austria)	annual	FMA
			twice a year	Association for Archaeology in Upper Austria
13a	Linz – Siedlung Martinsfeld	<i>Monitoring:</i> Annual visual inspection	permanent	Dept. for Archaeology of Upper Austria

ID No	Component part	Advised Measures / Actions	Time-frame	Resources / Authorities
		<i>Conservation:</i> The property is well preserved and a listed monument according to the national monuments protection act; hence, any intervention without permission by the FMA is punishable.	permanent	Dept. for Archaeology of Upper Austria
		<i>Research:</i> The property is in the ownership of the State of Upper Austria; research takes place in conjunction with the regular research work of the State Museum of Upper Austria and the State Dept. for Archaeology of Upper Austria.	regular	Dept. for Archaeology of Upper Austria
		<i>Education/Interpretation:</i> The site is partly visible, accessible and included in the Guide "The Roman Limes in Austria. Guide to archaeological monuments" (2015). Specific measures to enhance visualization and interpretation of the property shall be implemented by the national site management of the Danubelimes (i.a. stereoscopes, online information via the websites of the State Museum and the Site Management)	permanent 2019 and ongoing	Site Management
		<i>Communication:</i> Reports on activities and / or research results on the website of the State Museum of Upper Austria, in the "Find reports of Austria"	regularly annual	State Museum of Upper Austria FMA
		and in "Sonius" (journal on archaeological news from Upper Austria)	twice a year	Association for Archaeology in Upper Austria
13b	Linz – Befestigung Schlossberg	Monitoring: annual visual inspection	permanent	Dept. for Archaeology of Upper Austria
		<i>Conservation:</i> The property is well preserved and a listed monument according to the national monuments protection act; hence, any intervention without permission by the FMA is punishable.	permanent	
		<i>Research:</i> The property is in the ownership of the State of Upper Austria; research takes place in conjunction with the regular research work of the State Museum of Upper Austria and the State Dept. for Archaeology of Upper Austria.	regularly	Dept. for Archaeology of Upper Austria
		<i>Education/Interpretation:</i> The site is partly visible, accessible and included in the Guide "The Roman Limes in Austria. Guide to archaeological monuments" (2015). Specific measures to enhance visualization and interpretation of the property shall be implemented by the national site management of the Danubelimes (i.a. stereoscopes, online information via the websites of the State Museum and the Site Management)	permanent	Site Management
		The Linz Castle Museum throws light on Upper Austria as a border region of the Roman Empire. Military life, bathing culture, trade in luxury goods, beliefs and the relationship with death are among the themes on display in the archaeological collection.	permanent	State Museum of Upper Austria
		<i>Communication:</i> Reports on activities and / or research results on the website of the State Museum of Upper Austria, in the "Find reports of Austria"	regularly annual	State Museum of Upper Austria FMA
		and in "Sonius" (journal on archaeological news from Upper	twice a year	Association for

ID No	Component part	Advised Measures / Actions	Time-frame	Resources / Authorities
		Austria)		Archaeology in Upper Austria
14a	Enns - Gräberstraße	<p><i>Monitoring:</i> Annual visual inspection</p> <p><i>Conservation:</i> The property is a listed monument according to the national monuments protection act; hence, any intervention without permission by the FMA is punishable.</p> <p><i>Research:</i> research takes place in conjunction with the regular research work of the State Museum of Upper Austria and the State Dept. for Archaeology of Upper Austria.</p> <p><i>Education/Interpretation:</i> The site is part of the State Exhibition of Upper Austria “The Return of the Legion” that included a full refurbishment of the Municipal Museum of Enns, location of the main-exhibition. The latter will lead to a permanent presentation about Roman Life in Noricum that will be part of the State Museum of Upper Austria.</p> <p>Specific measures to enhance visualization and interpretation of the property shall be implemented by the national site management of the Danubelimes (i.a. stereoscopes, online information via the websites of the State Museum and the Site Management)</p> <p><i>Communication:</i> Reports on activities and / or research results on the website of the State Museum of Upper Austria, in the “Find reports of Austria”</p> <p>and in “Sonius” (journal on archaeological news from Upper Austria)</p>	<p>permanent</p> <p>permanent</p> <p>regularly</p> <p>permanent</p> <p>2019 and ongoing</p> <p>regularly</p> <p>annual</p> <p>twice a year</p>	<p>Site Management</p> <p>State Dept. for Archaeology of Upper Austria</p> <p>Research Framework</p> <p>Site Management</p> <p>State Museum of Upper Austria</p> <p>State Museum of Upper Austria</p> <p>FMA</p> <p>Association for Archaeology in Upper Austria</p>
14b	Enns – Canabae Südwest	Measures in common with Enns Gräberstraße	see ID 14a	see ID 14a
14c	Enns – St. Laurenz	<p>Measures in common with Enns Gräberstraße</p> <p><i>Additional remarks:</i> The property is located in the basement and the choir of St. Laurence church. It is well preserved and accessible to the public. The Museum Lauriacum holds finds from the legionary fort Lauricaum and the civilian settlement areas, which illuminate many different aspects of life in a Roman garrison town. The “Enns Urban Adventure Trail” takes the public to the exposed corner of the legionary fort and to the excavation beneath the St. Laurence church. The “History Walk” informs visitors at two locations about the “Limes Road” and the church Maria Anger in the former legionary fort. A new archaeological path was set up in tandem with the State Exhibition of Upper Austria 2018 connecting the legionary fort, civilian settlement areas, cemeteries and St. Laurence church.</p>	<p>permanent</p> <p>permanent</p> <p>2018 and ongoing</p>	<p>Site Management /State Museum of Upper Austria</p>
14d	Enns – Canabae Nordwest	Measures in common with Enns Gräberstraße	see ID 14a	see ID 14a
14e	Enns – Canabae Nordost	<p>Measures in common with Enns Gräberstraße</p> <p><i>Additional remarks:</i> The property comprises a battery of at least 12 limekilns.</p>	<p>see ID 14a</p> <p>since 2018</p>	<p>see ID 14a</p> <p>State Museum of</p>

ID No	Component part	Advised Measures / Actions	Time-frame	Resources / Authorities
		Part of those that are currently excavated by the State Dept. for Archaeology of Upper Austria together with the FMA. A shelter will be constructed based on the model of the properties in Oberranna and Schlögen and grant accessibility to the public. The property shall become a permanent part of the State Museum of Upper Austria.	2019/2020	Upper Austria, FMA
14f	Enns – Legionslager Zentralbereich	Measures in common with Enns Gräberstraße	see ID 14a	see ID 14a
14g	Enns – Legionslager Nordecke	Measures in common with Enns Gräberstraße	see ID 14a	see ID 14a
15	Albing - Legionslager	Monitoring: annual visual inspection	permanent	Site Management
		<i>Conservation:</i> The property is a listed monument according to the national monuments protection act; hence, any intervention without permission by the FMA is punishable.	permanent	Site Management
		<i>Research:</i> research takes place within the research framework being part of the national site management.	occasion-related	Research Framework
		<i>Education/Interpretation:</i> The site is included in the Guide “The Roman Limes in Austria. Guide to archaeological monuments” (2015) but not visible. Specific measures to enhance visualization and interpretation of the property shall be implemented by the national site management of the Danubelimes (i.a. stereoscopes, online information via the websites of the State Museum and the Site Management)	2019 and ongoing	Site Management
		<i>Communication:</i> Reports on activities and / or research results on the website of the Site Management and	2019 and ongoing	Site Management
		in the “Find reports of Austria”	annual	FMA
16a	Wallsee - Kastell	<i>Monitoring:</i> Annual visual inspection	permanent	Site Management
		<i>Conservation:</i> The property is a listed monument according to the national monuments protection act; hence, any intervention without permission by the FMA is punishable.	permanent	Site Management / Community of Wallsee
		<i>Research:</i> research takes place within the research framework being part of the national site management.	occasion-related	Research Framework
		<i>Education/Interpretation:</i> The site is included in the Guide “The Roman Limes in Austria. Guide to archaeological monuments” (2015) but not visible. Specific measures to enhance visualization and interpretation of the property shall be implemented by the national site management of the Danubelimes (i.a. stereoscopes, online information via the websites of the State Museum and the Site Management). The Roman Museum Wallsee displays remarkable finds from the Roman fort, e.g. a large vessel used for producing cheese. Tours and special programs for schoolchildren on the topic “The Romans in Wallsee” provide a wide range of information.	permanent	Site Management / Community of Wallsee Community of Wallsee

ID No	Component part	Advised Measures / Actions	Time-frame	Resources / Authorities
		<i>Communication:</i> Reports on activities and / or research results on the website of the Site Management and	occasion-related	Site Management
		in the “Find reports of Austria”	annual	FMA
16b	Wallsee - Kleinkastell	<i>Monitoring:</i> Annual visual inspection	permanent	Site Management / Community of Wallsee
		<i>Conservation:</i> The site is well preserved by a shelter in the basement of a public building (“Lebenswelt Wallsee”).		
		<i>Research</i> takes place within the research framework being part of the national site management.	regularly	
		<i>Education/Interpretation:</i> the local museum society that is part of the interpretation framework for the Danubelimes in Austria and Germany provides information on the property. A video visualization on site ensures permanent information for the visitors.	permanent	Communal Museum Society
		<i>Communication:</i> Reports on activities and / or research results are published in the “Find reports of Austria”	annual	FMA
17	Ybbs – Kleinkastell	<i>Monitoring:</i> Annual visual inspection	permanent	Site Management
		<i>Conservation:</i> The property is well preserved and a listed monument according to the national monuments protection act; hence, any intervention without permission by the FMA is punishable.	permanent	Site Management
		Conservation and restauration-works are in the planning stage	2019	FMA
		<i>Research:</i> takes place within the research framework being part of the national site management.	regularly	Research Framework
		<i>Education/Interpretation:</i> The property is visible, accessible and included in the Guide “The Roman Limes in Austria. Guide to archaeological monuments” (2015). Specific measures to enhance visualization and interpretation of the property shall be implemented by the national site management of the Danubelimes (i.a. stereoscopes, online information via the websites of the State Museum of Lower Austria and the Site Management)	2019 and ongoing	Site Management
		<i>Communication:</i> Recent research results are communicated to a wider public by the publication “Focus Denkmal”	2020	FMA
		Reports on activities and / or research results on the website of the Site Management and	occasion-related	Site Management
		in the “Find reports of Austria”	annual	FMA
18a	Pöchlarn – Kastell Hufeisenturm West	<i>Monitoring:</i> Annual visual inspection	permanent	Site Management
		<i>Conservation:</i> The property is well preserved and a listed monument according to the national monuments protection act; hence, any intervention without permission by the FMA is punishable.	permanent	Site Management
		The remains of the horseshoe tower in the basement of the communal center are currently cleansed	2019	FMA
		<i>Research</i> takes place within the research framework being	regularly	Research

ID No	Component part	Advised Measures / Actions	Time-frame	Resources / Authorities
		part of the national site management.		Framework
		<p><i>Education/Interpretation:</i> The property is visible and included in the Guide “The Roman Limes in Austria. Guide to archaeological monuments” (2015) but it is not public accessible.</p> <p>Specific measures to enhance visualization and interpretation of the property shall be implemented by the national site management of the Danubelimes (i.a. stereoscopes, online information via the websites of the State Museum of Lower Austria and the Site Management)</p>	2019 and ongoing	Site Management
		<p><i>Communication:</i> Reports on activities and / or research results on the website of the Site Management and</p> <p>in the “Find reports of Austria”</p>	occasion-related annual	Site Management FMA
18b	Pöchlarn – Kastell Zentralbereich	<p><i>Monitoring:</i> Annual visual inspection</p> <p><i>Conservation:</i> The property is located under a church that grants protection from interventions.</p> <p><i>Research:</i> takes place within the research framework being part of the national site management.</p>	permanent permanent regularly	Site Management Site Management Research Framework
		<p><i>Education/Interpretation:</i> The property is visible, accessible and included in the Guide “The Roman Limes in Austria. Guide to archaeological monuments” (2015). Specific measures to enhance visualization and interpretation of the property shall be implemented by the national site management of the Danubelimes (i.a. stereoscopes, online information via the websites of the Town Museum of Pöchlarn, the State Museum of Lower Austria and the Site Management).</p> <p>In the Wels Tower located directly at the Danube Cycle Path the museum presents the history of the Roman fort of Arelape using up-to-date technology and displaying finds from recent excavations. Exhibitions / Installations form local artists amend the Roman exhibition.</p>	2019 and ongoing permanent	Site Management Community of Pöchlarn
		<p><i>Communication:</i> Reports on activities and / or research results on the website of the Site Management and in the “Find reports of Austria”</p>	permanent annual	Site Management FMA
18c	Pöchlarn – Hufeisenturm Ost	<p><i>Monitoring:</i> Annual visual inspection</p> <p><i>Conservation:</i> The property is located under a retirement home that grants preservation and protection from interventions.</p> <p><i>Research:</i> takes place within the research framework being part of the national site management.</p>	permanent permanent regularly	Site Management Municipality / Site Management Research Framework
		<p><i>Education/Interpretation:</i> The property is visible and included in the Guide “The Roman Limes in Austria. Guide to archaeological monuments” (2015); it is not permanently accessible.</p> <p>Specific measures to enhance visualization and interpretation of the property shall be implemented by the national site management of the Danubelimes (i.a. stereoscopes, online information via the websites of the</p>	2019 and ongoing	Site Management

ID No	Component part	Advised Measures / Actions	Time-frame	Resources / Authorities
		Town Museum of Pöchlarn, the State Museum of Lower Austria and the Site Management)		
		<i>Communication:</i> Reports on activities and / or research results on the website of the Site Management and	occasion-related	Site Management
		in the “Find reports of Austria”	annual	FMA
18d	Pöchlarn - Vicus und Kastellbad	<i>Monitoring:</i> Annual visual inspection	permanent	Site Management
		<i>Conservation:</i> The property is well preserved and a listed monument according to the national monuments protection act; hence, any intervention without permission by the FMA is punishable.	permanent	Site Management
		<i>Research:</i> takes place within the research framework being part of the national site management.	regularly	Research Framework
		<i>Education/Interpretation:</i> The property is included in the Guide “The Roman Limes in Austria. Guide to archaeological monuments” (2015) but not visible. It is located in a public accessible park area and comprises the only Mithraeum preserved on the northern Danubelimes. Specific measures to enhance visualization and interpretation of the property shall be implemented by the national site management of the Danubelimes (i.a. stereoscopes, online information via the websites of the Town Museum of Pöchlarn, the State Museum of Lower Austria and the Site Management)	2019 and ongoing	Site Management
		<i>Communication:</i> Reports on activities and / or research results on the website of the Site Management and	occasion-related	Site Management
		in the “Find reports of Austria”	annual	FMA
19	Blashausraben – Wachturm	<i>Monitoring:</i> Annual visual inspection	permanent	Site Management
		<i>Conservation:</i> The property is a listed monument according to the national monuments protection act; hence, any intervention without permission by the FMA is punishable. Aside from that, the property is located within the World Heritage Property “Cultural Landscape Wachau” and thereby in an area of enhanced attentiveness.	permanent	Site Management
		<i>Research:</i> takes place within the research framework being part of the national site management.	regularly	Research Framework
		<i>Education/Interpretation:</i> The property included in the Guide “The Roman Limes in Austria. Guide to archaeological monuments” (2015) but not visible. Specific measures to enhance visualization and interpretation of the property shall be implemented by the national site management of the Danubelimes (i.a. stereoscopes, online information via the websites of the State Museum of Lower Austria and the Site Management).	2019 and ongoing	Site Management
		<i>Communication:</i> Reports on activities and / or research results on the website of the Site Management and in the “Find reports of Austria”	occasion-related annual	Site Management FMA
20	St. Johann im Mauerthale – Wachturm	<i>Monitoring:</i> Annual visual inspection	permanent	Site Management
		<i>Conservation:</i> The property is integrated in the church of St.	permanent	Site Management

ID No	Component part	Advised Measures / Actions	Time-frame	Resources / Authorities
		<p>Johann the Baptist that grants protection from any intervention.</p> <p>Aside from that, the property is located within the World Heritage Property “Cultural Landscape Wachau” and thereby in an area of enhanced attentiveness.</p> <p><i>Research:</i> takes place within the research framework being part of the national site management.</p> <p><i>Education/Interpretation:</i> The property is partly visible, accessible and included in the Guide “The Roman Limes in Austria. Guide to archaeological monuments” (2015). On site, information shall be provided through booklets and guided tours.</p> <p>Specific measures to enhance visualization and interpretation of the property shall be implemented by the national site management of the Danubelimes (i.a. stereoscopes, online information via the websites of the State Museum of Lower Austria and the Site Management).</p> <p><i>Communication:</i> Reports on activities and / or research results on the website of the Site Management and</p> <p>in the “Find reports of Austria”</p> <p>Recent research results are communicated to a wider public by the publication “Focus Denkmal”</p>	<p>regularly</p> <p>2019 and ongoing</p> <p>occasion-related</p> <p>annual</p> <p>2020</p>	<p>Research Framework</p> <p>Site Management</p> <p>Site Management</p> <p>FMA</p> <p>FMA</p>
21	Bacharnsdorf – Wachturm	<p><i>Monitoring:</i> Annual visual inspection</p> <p><i>Conservation:</i> The property is integrated in a private house that grants protection from any intervention. Aside from that, the property is located within the World Heritage Property “Cultural Landscape Wachau” and thereby in an area of enhanced attentiveness.</p> <p><i>Research:</i> takes place within the research framework being part of the national site management.</p> <p><i>Education/Interpretation:</i> The property is partly visible, accessible and included in the Guide “The Roman Limes in Austria. Guide to archaeological monuments” (2015). Specific measures to enhance visualization and interpretation of the property shall be implemented by the national site management of the Danubelimes (i.a. stereoscopes, online information via the websites of the State Museum of Lower Austria and the Site Management).</p> <p><i>Communication:</i> Reports on activities and / or research results on the website of the Site Management and</p> <p>in the “Find reports of Austria”</p>	<p>permanent</p> <p>permanent</p> <p>Regularly</p> <p>2019 and ongoing</p> <p>occasion-related</p> <p>annual</p>	<p>Site Management</p> <p>Site Management</p> <p>Research Framework</p> <p>Site Management</p> <p>Site Management</p> <p>FMA</p>
22	St. Lorenz - Wachturm	<p><i>Monitoring:</i> Annual visual inspection</p> <p><i>Conservation:</i> The property is integrated in the chapel of St. Lorenz that grants protection from any intervention. Aside from that, the property is located within the World Heritage Property “Cultural Landscape Wachau” and thereby in an area of enhanced attentiveness.</p> <p><i>Research:</i> takes place within the research framework being part of the national site management.</p>	<p>permanent</p> <p>permanent</p> <p>regularly</p>	<p>Site Management</p> <p>Site Management</p> <p>Research Framework</p>

ID No	Component part	Advised Measures / Actions	Time-frame	Resources / Authorities
		<p><i>Education/Interpretation:</i> The property is partly visible and included in the Guide “The Roman Limes in Austria. Guide to archaeological monuments” (2015) but not permanently accessible.</p> <p>Specific measures to enhance visualization and interpretation of the property shall be implemented by the national site management of the Danubelimes (i.a. stereoscopes, online information via the websites of the State Museum of Lower Austria and the Site Management).</p>	2019 and ongoing	Site Management
		<p><i>Communication:</i> Reports on activities and / or research results on the website of the Site Management and</p> <p>in the “Find reports of Austria”</p>	occasion-related annual	Site Management FMA
23	Windstalgraben - Wachturm	<p><i>Monitoring:</i> Annual visual inspection</p> <p><i>Conservation:</i> The property is a listed monument according to the national monuments protection act; hence, any intervention without permission by the FMA is punishable. The FMA currently carries out conservation and restauration works at the property. Aside from that, the property is located within the World Heritage Property “Cultural Landscape Wachau” and thereby in an area of enhanced attentiveness.</p> <p><i>Research:</i> takes place within the research framework being part of the national site management.</p> <p><i>Education/Interpretation:</i> The property is visible, accessible and included in the Guide “The Roman Limes in Austria. Guide to archaeological monuments” (2015). Specific measures to enhance visualization and interpretation of the property shall be implemented by the national site management of the Danubelimes (i.a. stereoscopes, online information via the websites of the State Museum of Lower Austria and the Site Management).</p> <p><i>Communication:</i> Reports on activities and / or research results on the website of the Site Management and</p> <p>in the “Find reports of Austria”</p>	permanent permanent 2019 Regularly 2019 and ongoing occasion-related annual	Site Management Site Management FMA Research Framework Site Management Site Management FMA
24a	Mautern – Kastell Westbereich	<p><i>Monitoring:</i> Annual visual inspection</p> <p><i>Conservation:</i> The property is a listed monument according to the national monuments protection act; hence, any intervention without permission by the FMA is punishable. Aside from that, the property is located within the World Heritage Property “Cultural Landscape Wachau” and thereby in an area of enhanced attentiveness.</p> <p><i>Research:</i> takes place within the research framework being part of the national site management.</p> <p><i>Education/Interpretation:</i> The property is visible, accessible and included in the Guide “The Roman Limes in Austria. Guide to archaeological monuments” (2015). Specific measures to enhance visualization and interpretation of the property shall be implemented by the national site management of the Danubelimes (i.a.</p>	permanent permanent regularly 2019 and ongoing	Site Management Site Management Research Framework Site Management

ID No	Component part	Advised Measures / Actions	Time-frame	Resources / Authorities
		stereoscopes, online information via the websites of the State Museum of Lower Austria and the Site Management).		
		The museum is not far from the visible Roman monuments on the western side of the fort. Wall painting, food and pottery testify to domestic life, while finds explain the long history of Roman Mautern up to the period of St. Severin, who lived here. The Favianis-Mautern Culture Path connects the various monuments of the Roman fort and presents the history on information panels.	permanent	Community of Mautern
		<i>Communication:</i> Reports on activities and / or research results on the website of the Site Management and	occasion-related	Site Management
		in the “Find reports of Austria”	annual	FMA
24b	Mautern – Kastell Ostbereich	<i>Monitoring:</i> Annual visual inspection	permanent	Site Management
		<i>Conservation:</i> The property is a listed monument according to the national monuments protection act; hence, any intervention without permission by the FMA is punishable. Aside from that, the property is located within the World Heritage Property “Cultural Landscape Wachau” and thereby in an area of enhanced attentiveness.	permanent	Site Management
		<i>Research:</i> takes place within the research framework being part of the national site management.	regularly	Research Framework
		<i>Education/Interpretation:</i> The property is visible, accessible and included in the Guide “The Roman Limes in Austria. Guide to archaeological monuments” (2015). Specific measures to enhance visualization and interpretation of the property shall be implemented by the national site management of the Danubelimes (i.a. stereoscopes, online information via the websites of the State Museum of Lower Austria and the Site Management). On site, information shall be provided through booklets and guided tours.	2019 and ongoing	Site Management
		In addition to this, the local museum provides specific information and activities to interpret the property on-site. <i>Communication:</i> Reports on activities and / or research results on the website of the Site Management and	occasion-related	Site Management
		in the “Find reports of Austria”	annual	FMA
25a	Traismauer – Kastell südwestlicher Fächerturm	<i>Monitoring:</i> Annual visual inspection	permanent	Site Management
		<i>Conservation:</i> The property is a listed monument according to the national monuments protection act; hence, any intervention without permission by the FMA is punishable.	permanent	Site Management
		<i>Research:</i> takes place within the research framework being part of the national site management.	regularly	Research Framework
		<i>Education/Interpretation:</i> The property is visible, accessible and included in the Guide “The Roman Limes in Austria. Guide to archaeological monuments” (2015). Specific measures to enhance visualization and interpretation of the property shall be implemented by the national site management of the Danubelimes (i.a. stereoscopes, online information via the websites of the	2019 and ongoing	Site Management

ID No	Component part	Advised Measures / Actions	Time-frame	Resources / Authorities
		State Museum of Lower Austria and the Site Management). On site, information shall be provided through booklets and guided tours.		
		<i>Communication:</i> Reports on activities and / or research results on the website of the Site Management and in the “Find reports of Austria”	occasion-related annual	Site Management FMA
25b	Traismauer – Kleinkastell	<i>Monitoring:</i> Annual visual inspection	permanent	Site Management
		<i>Conservation:</i> The property is a listed monument according to the national monuments protection act; hence, any intervention without permission by the FMA is punishable.	permanent	Site Management
		<i>Research:</i> takes place within the research framework being part of the national site management.	regularly	Research Framework
		<i>Education/Interpretation:</i> The property is partly visible, accessible and included in the Guide “The Roman Limes in Austria. Guide to archaeological monuments” (2015). Specific measures to enhance visualization and interpretation of the property shall be implemented by the national site management of the Danubelimes (i.a. stereoscopes, online information via the websites of the State Museum of Lower Austria and the Site Management). On site, information shall be provided through booklets and guided tours.	2019 and ongoing	Site Management
		<i>Communication:</i> Reports on activities and / or research results on the website of the Site Management and in the “Find reports of Austria”	occasion-related annual	Site Management FMA
25c	Traismauer – Kastell Zentralbereich	<i>Monitoring:</i> Annual visual inspection	permanent	Site Management
		<i>Conservation:</i> The property is a listed monument according to the national monuments protection act; hence, any intervention without permission by the FMA is punishable.	permanent	Site Management
		<i>Research:</i> takes place within the research framework being part of the national site management.	regularly	Research Framework
		<i>Education/Interpretation:</i> The property is partly visible, accessible and included in the Guide “The Roman Limes in Austria. Guide to archaeological monuments” (2015). Specific measures to enhance visualization and interpretation of the property shall be implemented by the national site management of the Danubelimes (i.a. stereoscopes, online information via the websites of the State Museum of Lower Austria and the Site Management). On site, information shall be provided through booklets and guided tours.	2019 and ongoing	Site Management
		<i>Communication:</i> Reports on activities and / or research results on the website of the Site Management and in the “Find reports of Austria”	occasion-related annual	Site Management FMA
25d	Traismauer – Kastell Hufeisenturm	<i>Monitoring:</i> Annual visual inspection	permanent	Site Management
		<i>Conservation:</i> The property is a listed monument according to the national monuments protection act; hence, any	permanent	Site Management

ID No	Component part	Advised Measures / Actions	Time-frame	Resources / Authorities
		intervention without permission by the FMA is punishable.		
		<i>Research:</i> takes place within the research framework being part of the national site management.	regularly	Research Framework
		<i>Education/Interpretation:</i> The property is partly visible, accessible and included in the Guide “The Roman Limes in Austria. Guide to archaeological monuments” (2015). Specific measures to enhance visualization and interpretation of the property shall be implemented by the national site management of the Danubelimes (i.a. stereoscopes, online information via the websites of the State Museum of Lower Austria and the Site Management). In addition to this, the local museum provides specific information and activities to interpret the property on-site.	2019 and ongoing	Site Management
		<i>Communication:</i> Reports on activities and / or research results on the website of the Site Management and	occasion-related	Site Management
		in the “Find reports of Austria”	annual	FMA
25e	Traismauer – Kastell Römertor	<i>Monitoring:</i> Annual visual inspection	permanent	Site Management
		<i>Conservation:</i> The property is a listed monument according to the national monuments protection act; hence, any intervention without permission by the FMA is punishable.	permanent	Site Management
		<i>Research:</i> takes place within the research framework being part of the national site management.	regularly	Research Framework
		<i>Education/Interpretation:</i> The property is partly visible, accessible and included in the Guide “The Roman Limes in Austria. Guide to archaeological monuments” (2015). Specific measures to enhance visualization and interpretation of the property shall be implemented by the national site management of the Danubelimes (i.a. stereoscopes, online information via the websites of the State Museum of Lower Austria and the Site Management). In addition to this, the local museum provides specific information and activities to interpret the property on-site. The museum is housed in a tower of the fortifications. The new urban park includes a circular tour: the castle with Roman stone monuments in the courtyard, the Roman gate with late antique building structure, conserved remains of the Roman headquarters building underneath the parish church	2019 and ongoing	Site Management
		<i>Communication:</i> Reports on activities and / or research results on the website of the Site Management and	permanent	Community of Traismauer
		in the “Find reports of Austria”	occasion-related	Site Management
		in the “Find reports of Austria”	annual	FMA
26	Zwentendorf – Kastell, Vicus, Gräberfelder	<i>Monitoring:</i> Annual visual inspection	permanent	Site Management
		<i>Conservation:</i> The property is a listed monument according to the national monuments protection act; hence, any intervention without permission by the FMA is punishable.	permanent	Site Management
		<i>Research:</i> takes place within the research framework being part of the national site management.	regularly	Research Framework

ID No	Component part	Advised Measures / Actions	Time-frame	Resources / Authorities
		<i>Education/Interpretation:</i> The property is included in the Guide “The Roman Limes in Austria. Guide to archaeological monuments” (2015) but not visible.		
		The local museum shows the only fort in Austria that was not been built upon in models and aerials photos. Finds testify to the presence of the Romans over a period of almost 500 years, the beginning of Zwentendorfs history.	permanent	Community of Zwentendorf
		Specific measures to enhance visualization and interpretation of the property shall be implemented by the national site management of the Danubelimes (i.a. stereoscopes, online information via the websites of the State Museum of Lower Austria and the Site Management).	2019 and ongoing	Site Management
		The possibility to visualize the property by various plantings is currently in discussion. The basis for the measures is a project study completed in 2017.		State of Lower Austria, Federal Chancellery
		<i>Communication:</i> Reports on activities and / or research results on the website of the Site Management and	occasion-related	Site Management
		in the “Find reports of Austria”	annual	FMA
27a	Tulln – Kastell Hufeisenturm	<i>Monitoring:</i> Annual visual inspection	permanent	Site Management
		<i>Conservation:</i> The property is excellently preserved to the rooftop due to the medieval re-use of the tower.	permanent	Site Management
		<i>Research</i> takes place within the research framework being part of the national site management.	regularly	Research Framework
		<i>Education/Interpretation:</i> The property is visible, accessible and included in the Guide “The Roman Limes in Austria. Guide to archaeological monuments” (2015) but not public accessible.		
		Specific measures to enhance visualization and interpretation of the property shall be implemented by the national site management of the Danubelimes (i.a. stereoscopes, online information via the websites of the State Museum of Lower Austria and the Site Management).	2019 and ongoing	Site Management
		The local museum explains the military importance of the cavalry fort Comagenis with the conserved remains of a gate. Figurines, dioramas and finds tell of the soldiers life. Tours to the late antique monuments (Salt Tower, Fanshaped Tower) take place regularly.	permanent	Community of Tulln
		<i>Communication:</i> Reports on activities and / or research results on the website of the Site Management and	occasion-related	Site Management
		in the “Find reports of Austria”	annual	FMA
27b	Tulln – Kastell Zentralbereich	<i>Monitoring:</i> Annual visual inspection	permanent	Site Management
		<i>Conservation:</i> The property is well preserved due to a protective structure built in 2001.	permanent	Site Management
		<i>Research:</i> takes place within the research framework being part of the national site management.	regularly	Research Framework

ID No	Component part	Advised Measures / Actions	Time-frame	Resources / Authorities
		<p><i>Education/Interpretation:</i> The property is partly visible, accessible and included in the Guide “The Roman Limes in Austria. Guide to archaeological monuments” (2015) but not permanently accessible.</p> <p>Specific measures to enhance visualization and interpretation of the property shall be implemented by the national site management of the Danubelimes (i.a. stereoscopes, online information via the websites of the State Museum of Lower Austria and the Site Management).</p>	2019 and ongoing	Site Management
		<p><i>Communication:</i> Reports on activities and / or research results on the website of the Site Management and</p>	occasion-related	Site Management
		in the “Find reports of Austria”	annual	FMA
28a	Zeiselmauer – Kleinkastell	<p><i>Monitoring:</i> Annual visual inspection</p>	permanent	Site Management
		<p><i>Conservation:</i> The property is well preserved.</p>	permanent	Site Management
		<p><i>Research:</i> takes place within the research framework being part of the national site management.</p>	regularly	Research Framework
		<p><i>Education/Interpretation:</i> The property is visible, accessible and included in the Guide “The Roman Limes in Austria. Guide to archaeological monuments” (2015) but not permanently accessible.</p> <p>The community of Zeiselmauer provides specific information on the property: i.a. by a small permanent exhibition about finds in the entrance hall of the former post – office (today a baker shop) located in the municipal office.</p> <p>Specific measures to enhance visualization and interpretation of the property shall be implemented by the national site management of the Danubelimes (i.a. stereoscopes, online information via the websites of the State Museum of Lower Austria and the Site Management).</p>	2019 and ongoing	Site Management
		<p><i>Communication:</i> Reports on activities and / or research results on the website of the Site Management and</p>	occasion-related	Site Management
		in the “Find reports of Austria”	annual	FMA
28b	Zeiselmauer – Kastell Zentralbereich	<p><i>Monitoring:</i> Annual visual inspection</p>	permanent	Site Management
		<p><i>Conservation:</i> Parts of the property are well preserved by their location in the basement of the medieval parish church. The part located under the adjoin church square is a listed monument according to the national monuments protection act; hence, any intervention without permission by the FMA is punishable.</p>	permanent	Site Management
		<p><i>Research:</i> takes place within the research framework being part of the national site management.</p>	regularly	Research Framework
		<p><i>Education/Interpretation:</i> The property is partly visible, accessible and included in the Guide “The Roman Limes in Austria. Guide to archaeological monuments” (2015) but not permanently accessible.</p> <p>The community of Zeiselmauer provides specific information on the property: i.a. by a small permanent exhibition about finds in the entrance hall of the former post – office (today a baker shop) located in the municipal office.</p> <p>Specific measures to enhance visualization and</p>	2019 and	Community of Zeiselmauer Site Management

ID No	Component part	Advised Measures / Actions	Time-frame	Resources / Authorities
		interpretation of the property shall be implemented by the national site management of the Danubelimes (i.a. stereoscopes, online information via the websites of the State Museum of Lower Austria and the Site Management).	ongoing	
		<i>Communication:</i> Reports on activities and / or research results on the website of the Site Management and	occasion-related	Site Management
		in the “Find reports of Austria”	annual	FMA
28c	Zeiselmauer – Kastell	<i>Monitoring:</i> Annual visual inspection	permanent	Site Management
	Hufeisenturm	<i>Conservation:</i> The property is well preserved and integrated in the area of the public primary school.	permanent	Site Management
		<i>Research</i> takes place within the research framework being part of the national site management.	regularly	Research Framework
		<i>Education/Interpretation:</i> The property is visible, accessible and included in the Guide “The Roman Limes in Austria. Guide to archaeological monuments” (2015) but not permanently accessible. The community of Zeiselmauer provides specific information on the property: i.a. by a small permanent exhibition about finds in the entrance hall of the former post – office (today a baker shop) located in the municipal office.		Community of Zeiselmauer
		Specific measures to enhance visualization and interpretation of the property shall be implemented by the national site management of the Danubelimes (i.a. stereoscopes, online information via the websites of the State Museum of Lower Austria and the Site Management).	2019 and ongoing	Site Management
		<i>Communication:</i> Reports on activities and / or research results on the website of the Site Management and	occasion-related	Site Management
		in the “Find reports of Austria”	annual	FMA
28c	Zeiselmauer – Kastell Kastentor, Fächerturm, Ostmauer	<i>Monitoring:</i> Annual visual inspection	permanent	Site Management
		<i>Conservation:</i> The property consists of three very well preserved parts, which together form an ensemble that is one of the most impressive examples of Roman fortification architecture north of the Alps.	permanent	Site Management
		<i>Research:</i> takes place within the research framework being part of the national site management.	regularly	Research Framework
		<i>Education/Interpretation:</i> The property is visible and included in the Guide “The Roman Limes in Austria. Guide to archaeological monuments” (2015). Although some of the parts are not public accessible, all parts are very well visible from the direct vicinity. Information about the respective parts are partly provided by the estate owners (e.g. fan shaped tower in the garden of a private house). The community of Zeiselmauer provides specific information on the property: i.a. by a small permanent exhibition about finds in the entrance hall of the former post – office (today a baker shop) located in the municipal office. A circular route connects the various monuments of the Roman fort and presents the history on information panels.		Community of Zeiselmauer
		Specific measures to enhance visualization and interpretation of the property shall be implemented by the	2019 and ongoing	Site Management

ID No	Component part	Advised Measures / Actions	Time-frame	Resources / Authorities
		national site management of the Danubelimes (i.a. stereoscopes, online information via the websites of the State Museum of Lower Austria and the Site Management).		
		<i>Communication:</i> Reports on activities and / or research results on the website of the Site Management and	occasion-related	Site Management
		in the “Find reports of Austria”	annual	FMA
29	Klosterneuburg – Kastell und Vicus	<i>Monitoring:</i> Annual visual inspection	permanent	Site Management
		<i>Conservation:</i> The property is a listed monument according to the national monuments protection act; hence, any intervention without permission by the FMA is punishable. It is part of the area of the monastery of Klosterneuburg, one of the most famous cloister complexes in Europe and highly committed in safeguarding its cultural heritage. The property therewith is located in an area with increased archaeological observation intensity.	permanent	Site Management
		<i>Research:</i> takes place within the research framework being part of the national site management.	regularly	Research Framework
		<i>Education/Interpretation:</i> The property is included in the Guide “The Roman Limes in Austria. Guide to archaeological monuments” (2015) but not visible. Specific measures to enhance visualization and interpretation of the property shall be implemented by the national site management of the Danubelimes (i.a. stereoscopes, online information via the websites of the State Museum of Lower Austria and the Site Management).	2019 and ongoing	Site Management
		<i>Communication:</i> Reports on activities and / or research results on the website of the Site Management and	occasion-related	Site Management
		in the “Find reports of Austria”	annual	FMA
30a	Wien – Canabae West und Gräberfeld	<i>Monitoring:</i> Annual visual inspection	permanent	Site management / Dept. for Archaeology of the State of Vienna
		<i>Conservation:</i> The property is well preserved and a listed monument according to the national monuments protection act; hence, any intervention without permission by the FMA is punishable.	permanent	Archaeology of the State of Vienna
		<i>Research:</i> is part of the scientific work of the State Museum and the Dept. for Archaeology of the State of Vienna.	regularly	State Museum of Vienna / Dept. for Archaeology of the State of Vienna
		<i>Education/Interpretation:</i> The property is included in the Guide “The Roman Limes in Austria. Guide to archaeological monuments” (2015).		
		<i>Communication:</i> Reports on activities and / or research results are published on the website and in the publications of the Roman Museum and of the Dept. for Archaeology of the State of Vienna and	occasion-related	State Museum of Vienna / Dept. for Archaeology of the State of Vienna
		in the “Find reports of Austria”	annual	FMA
30b	Wien – Canabae Südwest	<i>Monitoring:</i> Annual visual inspection	permanent	Site management / Dept. for Archaeology of

ID No	Component part	Advised Measures / Actions	Time-frame	Resources / Authorities
		<i>Conservation:</i> The property is well preserved and a listed monument according to the national monuments protection act; hence, any intervention without permission by the FMA is punishable.	permanent	the State of Vienna
		<i>Research:</i> is part of the scientific work of the State Museum and the Dept. for Archaeology of the State of Vienna.	regularly	State Museum of Vienna / Dept. for Archaeology of the State of Vienna
		<i>Education/Interpretation:</i> The property being part of the Roman Museum of Vienna is visible, accessible and included in the Guide “The Roman Limes in Austria. Guide to archaeological monuments” (2015).	occasion-related	State Museum of Vienna
		<i>Communication:</i> Reports on activities and / or research results are published on the website and in in the publications of the Roman Museum and of the Dept. for Archaeology of the State of Vienna and	annual	State Museum of Vienna / Dept. for Archaeology of the State of Vienna
		in the “Find reports of Austria”		FMA
30c	Wien – Legionslager Umwehrung	<i>Monitoring:</i> Annual visual inspection	permanent	Site management / Dept. for Archaeology of the State of Vienna
		<i>Conservation:</i> The property is well preserved and a listed monument according to the national monuments protection act; hence, any intervention without permission by the FMA is punishable.	permanent	State Museum of Vienna / Dept. for Archaeology of the State of Vienna
		<i>Research:</i> is part of the scientific work of the State Museum and the Dept. for Archaeology of the State of Vienna.	regularly	State Museum of Vienna / Dept. for Archaeology of the State of Vienna
		<i>Education/Interpretation:</i> The property being part of the Roman Museum of Vienna is visible, accessible and included in the Guide “The Roman Limes in Austria. Guide to archaeological monuments” (2015).		State Museum of Vienna
		<i>Communication:</i> Reports on activities and / or research results are published on the website and in in the publications of the Roman Museum and of the Dept. for Archaeology of the State of Vienna and	occasion-related	State Museum of Vienna / Dept. for Archaeology of the State of Vienna
		in the “Find reports of Austria”	annual	FMA
30d	Wien – Legionslager Zentralbereich	<i>Monitoring:</i> Annual visual inspection	permanent	Site management / Dept. for Archaeology of the State of Vienna
		<i>Conservation:</i> The property is well preserved and a listed monument according to the national monuments protection act; hence, any intervention without permission by the FMA is punishable.	permanent	State Museum of Vienna / Dept. for Archaeology of the State of Vienna
		<i>Research:</i> is part of the scientific work of the State Museum and the Dept. for Archaeology of the State of Vienna.	regularly	State Museum of Vienna / Dept. for Archaeology of the State of Vienna
		<i>Education/Interpretation:</i> The property being part of the Roman Museum of Vienna is visible, accessible and included in the Guide “The Roman Limes in Austria. Guide to archaeological monuments” (2015).		State Museum of Vienna
		<i>Communication:</i> Reports on activities and / or research results are published on the website and in in the	occasion-related	State Museum of Vienna / Dept. for

ID No	Component part	Advised Measures / Actions	Time-frame	Resources / Authorities
		publications of the Roman Museum and of the Dept. for Archaeology of the State of Vienna and		Archaeology of the State of Vienna
		in the “Find reports of Austria”	annual	FMA
30e	Wien – Legionslager Tribünenhäuser	<i>Monitoring:</i> visual inspection, climate control, surveys of the general condition of the protective measures etc. take place in regular cycles.	permanent	State Museum of Vienna / Dept. for Archaeology of the State of Vienna
		<i>Conservation:</i> The property is well preserved as it is integrated in the Roman Museum, a branch of the State Museum of Vienna and hence free from interventions.	permanent	
		Since several years a special program for the research about safeguarding methods related to the finds in the Roman Museum are carried out in cooperation with the Academy of Fine Arts, faculty for Mural Painting / Architectural Surfaces and the Institute for Conservation and Restoration	to be continued 2019	State Museum of Vienna / Dept. for Archaeology of the State of Vienna/ Academy of Fine Arts
		<i>Research:</i> is part of the scientific work of the State Museum and the Dept. for Archaeology of the State of Vienna.		
		<i>Education/Interpretation:</i> The property being part of the Roman Museum of Vienna is visible, accessible and included in the Guide “The Roman Limes in Austria. Guide to archaeological monuments” (2015). The museum deals with the heyday of the legionary fortress Vindobona and the different people living there at that time. Digital reconstructions and interactive computer stations bring Vienna’s Roman history to life.	regularly	State Museum of Vienna / Dept. for Archaeology of the State of Vienna
		Museum Programs in addition to the permanent exhibition change regularly and include special interpretation programs for children explaining everyday life in Vindobona. Annual Special Exhibitions inform the public about new finds from the Roman period in Vienna and about recent research results.	2019 and ongoing	State Museum of Vienna / Dept. for Archaeology of the State of Vienna
		Further to this also the Federal Museum for Art History and the Federal Museum for the History of Nature (both in Vienna), possess and display finds related to Vindobona and different sites along the Danubelimes in Austria.	permanent	Museum for Art History / Museum for the History of Nature
		<i>Communication:</i> Reports on activities and / or research results are published on the website and in in the publications of the Roman Museum and of the Dept. for Archaeology of the State of Vienna and	occasion-related	State Museum of Vienna / Dept. for Archaeology of the State of Vienna
		in the “Find reports of Austria”	annual	FMA
31	Carnuntum – Legionslager, Zivilstadt, Vici, Gräberfelder	<i>Monitoring:</i> visual inspection and surveys of the general condition of the protective measures etc. take place in regular cycles.	permanent	State Museum of Lower Austria Carnuntum Branch
		<i>Conservation:</i> The property largely is well preserved as it is part of the Museum Carnuntum, a branch of the State Museum of Lower Austria, and the largest archaeological monument landscape in central Europe.	permanent	
		For those parts of the huge area that are not yet legally protected according to the national monuments protection	2019	FMA

ID No	Component part	Advised Measures / Actions	Time-frame	Resources / Authorities
		act, the protection procedure started and hopefully will be completed in 2019.		
		<i>Research:</i> Systematic scientific research began in 1877 in the Legionary Fortress and continued ever since. Today it is part of the scientific work of the State Museum and the Dept. for Archaeology of the State of Lower Austria.	permanent	State Museum of Lower Austria Carnuntum Branch
		<i>Education/Interpretation:</i> The property being part of the Carnuntum Museum of Lower Austria is visible, accessible and included in the Guide “The Roman Limes in Austria. Guide to archaeological monuments” (2015). Parts are invisible and not accessible. Museum Programs in addition to the permanent exhibition change regularly and include special interpretation programs for people of all age explaining everyday life on the Roman Limes with special regard to Carnuntum. Visitors can experience history in reconstructed baths and houses, at Roman celebrations, gladiatorial tournaments and special events like Roman Delicacies day.	permanent	State Museum of Lower Austria Carnuntum Branch
		The Heidentor forms the most famous symbol of Austria’s Roman past and is the only ancient monument for Carnuntum visibly preserved over the centuries.		
		Two well-preserved Amphitheaters in Petronell-Carnuntum and in Bad Deutsch Altenburg are open to the public. The latter provides a small museum exhibition about the life of the gladiators. Gladiatorial tournaments take place on site regularly.		
		The Museum Carnuntinum in Bad Deutsch Altenburg is the setting for special exhibitions that display a selection of the roughly 2, 8 million objects of the collection.		
		<i>Communication:</i> Reports on activities and / or research results are published on the website and in in the publications of the Carnuntum Museum and of the Dept. for Archaeology of the State of Lower Austria and	occasion-related	State Museum of Lower Austria Carnuntum Branch
		in the “Find reports of Austria”	annual	FMA

3.b. National Management Plan Germany

Table of contents

PART A – Management Plan 2019-2025 for The Danube Limes in Bavaria within the nominated World Heritage Site Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes (Western Segment)	75
<hr/>	
1. Introduction	76
1.1. Value of The Danube Limes in Bavaria as part of the <i>Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes</i>	76
1.2. Responsibilities	77
1.3. Concept	78
<hr/>	
2. Validity	79
2.1. Basis	79
2.2. Boundaries of the Danube Limes in Bavaria	80
2.3. Boundaries of the surrounding buffer zone	80
<hr/>	
3. Description of the validity of content	81
3.1. Parties responsible for the Management Plan	81
3.2. Status of the Management Plan	81
3.3. Reviewing	82
<hr/>	
4. Necessities	83
4.1. Parameters	83
4.2. Threats	83
<hr/>	
5. Aims	85
5.1. The process of increasing public awareness	85
5.2. Protection and care, research and presentation	85
5.3. Development possibilities	85
5.4. Guidelines	86
<hr/>	
6. Basis	87
6.1. Compilation of data	87
6.2. Research principles	87
6.3. International cooperation	88
<hr/>	
7. Protection and conservation	89
7.1. The monument in unbuilt areas	89
7.2. The monument in built-up areas	90

8. Monument presentation	91
8.1. Objectives	91
8.2. Implementation	91
<hr/>	
9. Tourism	92
9.1. The principles	92
9.2. Goals	92
9.3. Achievement of measures	92
9.4. Instruments	93
<hr/>	
10. Realization of measures of the Management Plan	94
10.1. Participating institutions and persons	94
10.2. Implementation of the Management Plan	95
10.3. Coordination through the German Limes Commission DLK	96
<hr/>	
Part B – Guidelines for the conservation, restoration, reconstruction, rebuilding and conservational covering of the archaeological monuments of The Danube Limes in Bavaria	97
1. Preamble	97
2. Definitions	97
3. General parameters	98
4. Guidelines for future actions	99
5. International regulations	100
<hr/>	
Part C – Danube Limes Interpretation Framework (DLIF) The Danube Frontier in Austria and Bavaria: Frontline and Stronghold of the Roman Empire	101
1. Definitions	101
1.1. Danube Limes Interpretation Framework (DLIF) – Aims and Strategies	101
1.2. DLIF – Validity Area	103
1.3. DLIF – Audience Development and addressees	103
1.4. DLIF – Primary Concepts	103
<hr/>	
2. Policies for Interpretation	104
2.1. Key Principles	104
2.2. Criteria for Selection of key themes and topics for interpretation	105
2.3. Interpretation Strategies	106
2.4. Awareness-Building strategies	108
2.5. National institutions and organisations for interpretation	109
2.6. Implementations	111

3. Actions	113
3.1. Transnational and trans-regional development and actions	113
3.2. Development and actions for nominated properties and museums (from West to East)	115
3.3. Development and actions for museums in the Hinterland	125

Established by

The Limes Coordinator in Bavaria together with the
Arbeitsgemeinschaft römischer Museen am Limes in Deutschland and
The German Limes Commission (Deutsche Limeskommission, DLK)

Part A – Management Plan 2019-2025 for The Danube Limes in Bavaria within the nominated World Heritage Site *Frontiers of the Roman Empire* – *The Danube Limes (Western Segment)*

Overview

The Danube Limes in Bavaria has been nominated, with the support of the local municipalities, together with the relevant monuments in Austria and Slovakia to the UNESCO World Heritage Site *Frontiers of the Roman Empire - The Danube Limes (Western Segment)*. The Danube Limes in Bavaria once formed the border between the Roman Empire and "barbaricum", with a length of roughly 200 km. It met the Upper German-Raetian Limes at Eining. The Bavarian section was the first part of the Roman border built along the Danube and functioned between the 1st and 5th centuries AD. Although the border defence was designed uniformly, the topographical situation at the edge of the extensive floodplains of the river presented special challenges.

Today the monuments of The Danube Limes in Bavaria have an effect on the very different interests of a great number of people and institutions along the former frontier. Efforts to preserve it as a witness to history and to provide better visitor access can in individual cases conflict with the necessities of modern town planning and the commercial use of our cultural landscape.

This management plan rests firmly on the conviction that an improved exchange of information along the length of The Danube Limes in Bavaria and further down the river within the *Frontiers of the Roman Empire - The Danube Limes* as well as along the Upper German-Raetian Limes will form the basis for a consensus between the interests of preservation, research and tourism on the one hand, and the needs of those who live and work along the The Danube Limes in Bavaria on the other. Like a connecting framework, the plan contains precise statements regarding the future management of The Danube Limes in Bavaria as well as perspectives for its future development. The aim of the management plan is to identify ways in which the existing protection mechanisms can be improved and developed. The first steps towards achieving this are discussion and liaison as to how The Danube Limes in Bavaria can be sustainably protected, how it should be further researched, how visitor facilities can be improved, and how its landscape setting can be conserved and improved.

1. Introduction

1.1. Value of The Danube Limes in Bavaria as part of the *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes (Western Segment)*

1.1.1. The protection of The Danube Limes in Bavaria as part of the archaeological monument nominated as a UNESCO World Heritage Site and defined by the Monument Protection Law of the State of Bavaria as a cultural monument of special value, is a matter of particular public interest.

1.1.2. Originally a series of fortlets in the 1st century AD, the Limes developed especially in the late 1st and early 2nd centuries into a complex system of forts, fortlets and infrastructure facilities. They were connected through a road that functioned as a communication element along the southern bank of the Danube with the goal of providing a complete surveillance system of the northern frontier of the Roman Empire. The locations were generally chosen for topographical reasons: on the one hand in order to have a good overview of the riverbank, and on the other hand in order to oversee transportation along the meandering river - usually from a bluff on the southern bank. In the 2nd and 3rd centuries the system upriver was connected to the Upper German-Raetian Limes (part of the UNESCO World Heritage Site "*Frontiers of the Roman Empire*"). Downriver, The Danube Limes in Bavaria and The Danube Limes in Austria and beyond formed one unit. Thus, these sections have been nominated together as *Frontiers of the Roman Empire - The Danube Limes*. After the Upper German-Raetian Limes was given up, The Danube Limes in Bavaria continued, in an altered form, to form the Roman border, to the West even beyond the nominated section.

1.1.3. The nominated section of The Danube Limes in Bavaria constituted the northern border of the Roman Empire from the 1st into the 5th century. Thanks to the many mountains located beyond the Limes, this boundary was never crossed - except perhaps by short-term military campaigns.

1.1.4. The Danube Limes in Bavaria is a distinct riverine border along which military facilities were established like a string of beads. The nominated section stretching over 222 river kilometres from Bad Gögging - Heilbad and Passau Haibach - Burgus with a total of 9 components that occasionally include several component parts. In Regensburg it includes elements that lie within the inscribed World Heritage Site of the Old City of Regensburg with Stadtamhof, and in Eining it touches the inscribed World Heritage "*Frontiers of the Roman Empire - the Upper German-Raetian Limes*". Many of the Roman sites formed the basis for later Medieval settlements and are thus partly responsible for our current cultural landscape.

1.1.5. The nominated military installations of The Danube Limes in Bavaria, an integral part of the Roman border, belong to a total of 12 facilities from different times. As archaeological monuments, and in the case of Regensburg also architectural monuments, they form an authentic witness to the history of our country and provide an indispensable and irreplaceable source for historical research and understanding of Central European development.

1.1.6. In post-Roman times, too (and at certain places even today), The Danube Limes in Bavaria influenced the lives of people in its environment. In the names of towns, woods and meadows and also with its archaeological monuments it makes an important contribution to the area's identity. Its remains are occasionally parts of natural monuments, and an increased effort is required to secure their sustainable preservation and use.

1.1.7. The Danube Limes in Bavaria and its monuments are firmly established in the lives and work of the people who live in the neighbourhood, whereby a gradual transformation in the character of its importance can be observed which finds its expression in an increasing public awareness of the uniqueness of The Danube Limes in Bavaria.

1.1.8. Among the special attributes of The Danube Limes in Bavaria as an archaeological monument is the fact that, in addition to the large number of visible remains, a relatively large part of it lies invisible to the eye buried under the soil. It is thanks to this circumstance that the antiquities have survived in their authentic condition for nearly 1800 years. However, this fact also creates particular challenges with regard to the presentation and development of The Danube Limes in Bavaria.

1.1.9. In their entirety, the nominated components of The Danube Limes in Bavaria possess a high degree of integrity and bear evidence to the complex effort which the Romans exerted to protect their empire.

1.2. Responsibilities

1.2.1. Any alterations to the archaeological monument, or in the case of Regensburg also to the architectural monument, require the approval or permission of the Protection Agencies in accordance with the Bavarian Monument Protection Law.

1.2.2. It is the responsibility of the private and public landowners on whose land the individual parts of The Danube Limes in Bavaria lie to ensure that the remains of Roman history are handled responsibly, and this has often been the case for many generations. These owners and users of the land will also play an important role in the future.

1.2.3. Local authorities are important partners for future developments along The Danube Limes in Bavaria.

This applies not only to questions of preservation, but also to matters concerning public access. The German Limes Road Association (*Verein Deutsche Limes-Straße e.V.*) already has some responsibility for parts of The Danube Limes in Bavaria.

1.2.4. Many institutions are involved in the development of public access to The Danube Limes in Bavaria. In cooperation with and after the approval of the Protection Agencies in Bavaria, local authorities, civic partnerships, forestry offices and nature parks, but also in many cases local and regional associations build foot- and bicycle paths, put up signs or produce brochures and leaflets.

1.2.5. Research along The Danube Limes in Bavaria and its individual components has been carried out since the beginnings of scientific archaeology by universities, museums, the Bavarian State Conservation Office, local archaeologists and other research institutions. The authorisation and supervision of scientific archaeological excavations is the responsibility of the Protection Agencies and the Bavarian State Conservation Office.

1.2.6. With the foundation in 2003 of the German Limes Commission (Deutsche Limeskommission, DLK), whose responsibility was expanded in 2017 to include the area of The Danube Limes in Bavaria, the conservation, research and development of The Danube Limes in Bavaria were given a stronger, equal basis. The German Limes Commission is intended, as a point of contact for all persons, institutions and local government bodies, to improve the exchange of information and to assist in the coordination of whatever different schemes are planned, whereby the protection of The Danube Limes in Bavaria has the highest priority. Its research and development must serve the idea of protection.

1.2.7. Responsible for the coordination of the different fields of activity conservation, development and research of Danube Limes in Bavaria are the Bavarian State Conservation Office (Bayerisches Landesamt für Denkmalpflege) together with the German Limes Commission.

1.3. Concept

1.3.1. This Management Plan is based on the 2017 Management Plan for the World Heritage Site "*Frontiers of the Roman Empire - Upper German-Raetian Limes*".

1.3.2. The aim of the Management Plan is to create the basis for the continued preservation, conservation, research and development of the archaeological monument The Danube Limes in Bavaria, and to identify ways of implementing these plans. This Management Plan is the basis for future discussions with all parties involved along the length of The Danube Limes in Bavaria.

1.3.3. Specific chapters of this Management Plan also describe objectives for new regulations, in so far as they are seen as being necessary and meaningful for the protection, conservation or development of The Danube Limes in Bavaria.

1.3.4. The management of The Danube Limes in Bavaria closely coordinates its activities with the responsible management authorities of the other States Parties along the parts of the nominated World Heritage Site *Frontiers of the Roman Empire - The Danube Limes (Western Segment)*. The partners jointly agree upon new plans in the Intergovernmental Committee for the Frontiers of the Roman Empire - The Danube Limes and the Management Group for the Frontiers of the Roman Empire - The Danube Limes.

1.3.5. The management of the nominated World Heritage Site *Frontiers of the Roman Empire - The Danube Limes (Western Segment)* furthermore cooperates closely within the 'Frontiers of the Roman Empire World Heritage Cluster' in which all elements on the line of the Roman frontier that are inscribed on the World Heritage List or interested in an inscription are united.

1.3.6. The Management Plan will be revised every seven years. The further development of its contents will continue on the basis of experience gained in managing The Danube Limes in Bavaria and also through an exchange of experience with those organisations which manage the other sections of the former boundary of the Roman Empire, particularly if they are part of the UNESCO World Heritage Site "*Frontiers of the Roman Empire*" (Upper German-Raetian Limes, Hadrian's Wall, Antonine Wall).

2. Validity

2.1. Basis

2.1.1. The Danube Limes in Bavaria is an extensive archaeological monument which is made up of a number of different elements. The history of its rediscovery and of research on it is long. The results often reflect the spirit of the particular age. Approaches to its preservation and the development of visitor access are manifold and of different quality. The result has been that the condition of the monument varies greatly from place to place and from site to site.

2.1.2. Conservational considerations, scientific necessities and the interests of landowners, town planning offices, local inhabitants and visitors make it necessary to put in writing and continually revise a precise documentation of the monument's condition. For this reason, the Bavarian State Conservation Office will be required to organise and conduct systematic and comprehensive surveys.

2.1.3. The Danube Limes in Bavaria forms a homogeneous monument in very differing landscapes. The sites are located in forests, agricultural areas, in proximity of industrial estates, residential settlements, close to main roads or in built-up urban areas.

2.1.4. The Danube Limes in Bavaria is an authentic historical site and as such forms a direct link with the past. Thus, scientific research and a target group-oriented presentation of information are crucial everywhere along the former Roman frontier.

2.1.5. The Danube Limes in Bavaria, together with a countryside that is often very attractive, has a great potential for recreation and tourism. At the same time, there have arisen close links with landscape and nature conservation along the length of the monument.

2.1.6. The strongest affiliations between the archaeological sites and the surrounding landscape, or the Medieval and modern towns located above and around them, exist in those places where the remains of The Danube Limes in Bavaria are visible and accessible. In such places, it is particularly important that visual links be defined, preserved, strengthened or reestablished.

2.1.7. Basically, the components of The Danube Limes in Bavaria are preserved as archaeological, or in Regensburg as architectural, monuments and their locations are known. Nevertheless, they are not visibly accessible everywhere. In such areas it is necessary to try and make the invisible parts comprehensible. This serves to make visitor access easier while still pursuing a preservation concept. All measures should aim at keeping the substance of the monument undamaged.

2.1.8. The process of urbanisation which began in the Middle Ages interrupted in many places the relationship between the Roman sites and the countryside. In built-up areas this often severely impedes the discovery and cataloguing of archaeological remains.

2.1.9. Especially in built-up areas it is therefore necessary to protect those known and positively located elements of The Danube Limes in Bavaria. Desirably, all areas, in which archaeological substance may lie, should be located in an archaeological cadastre in order to facilitate protection or research. The Bavarian State Conservation Office offers support for this.

2.2. Boundaries of The Danube Limes in Bavaria

2.2.1. The plans and policies outlined here apply to all so-called components and component parts that belong to The Danube Limes in Bavaria. They are to be preserved as archaeological and architectural monuments in accordance with the Bavarian Monument Protection Law.

2.2.2. The designation of the protected area of The Danube Limes in Bavaria is based on precise surveying or on a direct relationship to known monuments or to scientifically-indicated extensions of the monuments belonging to The Danube Limes in Bavaria.

2.2.3. The Danube Limes in Bavaria encompasses the forts along the Danube with parts of the legionary fortress in Regensburg including the civilian encampments, public buildings, burial grounds, a thermal bath and temple, and roads.

2.2.4. The progress made in archaeological prospection and its methods and the general expansion of scientific knowledge make it necessary to regularly review and possibly revise the extent of the World Heritage Site's boundaries through the Bavarian State Conservation Office. Alterations to the World Heritage Site can only be made after the application of recognised expert archaeological and conservational acceptable methods.

2.2.5. Those areas in which the structure of the monument has been lost could be included for information purposes in all descriptions, in order to preserve the historical context.

2.3. Boundaries of the surrounding buffer zone

2.3.1. Buffer zones are intended to preserve and increase the awareness of The Danube Limes in Bavaria.

2.3.2. Buffer zones are defined in order to prevent unsuitable developments close to the monument or in its vicinity. Buffer zones are set up based on the Bavarian Monument Protection Law's stipulations for a monument's immediate environment, which states that alterations to the structure or visual setting of a monument must be assessed according to the relevant conservation criteria and approved. For this reason, they must be included in town planning and land use regulations, especially in order to preserve the visual integrity and authenticity of the monument.

2.3.3. Buffer zones have been established on The Danube Limes in Bavaria particularly in places where the remains of The Danube Limes in Bavaria have a formative influence on the landscape.

2.3.4. A buffer zone may also contain archaeological expectation areas. It is necessary, particularly in built-up areas, to protect unscheduled and unknown sites. This is an aspect in which research takes on an important role, in order to define the location and size of possible archaeological sites in such areas.

2.3.5. The designated area of the buffer zones of The Danube Limes in Bavaria was mapped precisely (see 6.1).

3. Description of the validity of content

3.1. Parties responsible for the Management Plan

3.1.1. Bavaria and the respective local communities have the obligation to preserve the built and archaeological monuments of The Danube Limes in Bavaria. To ensure its permanent survival it is necessary that as many persons and institutions as possible in the vicinity of The Danube Limes in Bavaria share that interest in its preservation.

3.1.2. Actions which serve the protection of The Danube Limes in Bavaria or the public awareness of it must therefore be continually revised to conform with changing social and technical conditions.

3.1.3. Being directly responsible for the *in situ* protection and development of The Danube Limes in Bavaria, the local authorities also bear great responsibility for the monument, within a successful monument-management. For this reason, they will be informed about the respective valid management plan.

3.1.4. It is the responsibility of the local community authorities to incorporate the World Heritage Danube Limes in Bavaria in their spatial planning.

3.1.5. This plan is addressed to those who are responsible for the day-to-day handling and care of The Danube Limes in Bavaria. Only when all responsible parties accept and work towards the conceived objectives will it be possible for these to be implemented.

3.2. Status of the Management Plan

3.2.1. This Management Plan provides the framework for all activities along the archaeological monument The Danube Limes in Bavaria. Its contents and objectives are such that they can be accepted by all concerned.

3.2.2. The maxims, procedures and guidelines mentioned in the Management Plan are in accordance with existing legal and administrative standards. In the course of implementation, it may be necessary to draw up additional agreements. The achievement of the goals outlined in the Management Plan is the duty of the entire society. The voluntary collaboration and cooperation of all involved parties plays a major role.

3.2.3. This Management Plan shall take effect upon the inscription on UNESCO's World Heritage List of The Danube Limes in Bavaria as a part of the nominated World Heritage Site *Frontiers of the Roman Empire - The Danube Limes (Western Segment)*.

3.2.4. In the year 2025 the Management Plan shall be revised on the basis of the experience gained between now and then.

3.3. Reviewing

3.3.1. Since the state of archaeological science develops continually, it is absolutely essential to regularly reassess the boundaries of the World Heritage Site and the surrounding buffer zones.

3.3.2. In the same way, the factual and administrative contents of the Management Plan will be continually reviewed and modified by the Bavarian State Conservation Office and the German Limes Commission in cooperation with the communities.

3.3.3. This will incorporate the results of reports submitted periodically to UNESCO.

4. Necessities

4.1. Parameters

4.1.1. The core of The Danube Limes in Bavaria covers an area of more than 34.41 ha, to which the buffer zone of 31.28 ha must be added. The size of the monument, its location in different landscapes and built-up areas and also the complexity of ownership patterns and management roles make agreement absolutely necessary to ensure its protection, conservation and development.

4.1.2. The Danube Limes in Bavaria is a concise monument of Outstanding Universal Value. As such, standards complying with internationally recognised criteria and agreements must be defined and applied to future activities at each component part of the monument.

4.1.3. In order to preserve the authenticity and integrity of the World Heritage, initiatives taken in the area of the component parts of The Danube Limes in Bavaria must be primarily oriented towards the conservation of the fabric of the monument. The protection of the nominated World Heritage Site forms the basis for all actions of research and development. This is adequately covered by existing legal and administrative parameters.

4.1.4. The scientific discussion about the archaeological monuments at the Roman frontier is to be considered. Research results are incorporated into the presentation of information about The Danube Limes in Bavaria and influence the conservation strategy of this monument.

4.1.5. A fundamental factor to be considered during all future activities at The Danube Limes in Bavaria is the acceptance by those people who live and work at or close to the monument, particularly in places where in addition to public interest in the preservation of the monument other interests exist.

4.1.6. The demands of visitors with regard to the accessibility of the monument and its presentation require special attention. Thus, the role of tourism should be considered in future plans.

4.2. Threats

4.2.1. Individual sections of The Danube Limes in Bavaria or parts of the fort locations along The Danube Limes in Bavaria are threatened by a number of factors. These factors may threaten not only the preservation of the monument itself but also scientific research and the way the monument is presented to the public. Therefore, all measures should aim at keeping the substance of the monument undamaged.

4.2.2. Damage may occur especially in places where parts of The Danube Limes in Bavaria are affected by construction projects, e.g. the construction of new roads or railways, industrial complexes, houses or quarrying and facilities for the production of energy.

4.2.3. Modern agriculture leads in some sections of The Danube Limes in Bavaria to interference with the monument's fabric. These activities should be carried out with great care in order to protect the monument.

4.2.4. Experience has shown that facilities for renewable energy can endanger the public's perception of the World Heritage. Wind turbines in particular can compromise The Danube Limes in Bavaria's appearance if they are located within a close view of the monument, or if they appear in a close perspective from the monument.

4.2.5. At present, only minimal danger to the World Heritage is caused directly by visitors' behaviour, such as through vandalism or walking on unstable or sensitive sections of the monument. Projects to increase the value of The Danube Limes in Bavaria (e.g. construction of paths, car parks, and playgrounds) should aim at keeping the substance of the monument unthreatened.

4.2.6. The presentation of the monument and its subsequent development must not be allowed to detract permanently from the impression which the monument itself makes. This applies to the number and type of information signs erected, the content of the signs, the positioning of these signs in relation to the monument as well as to the provision of other facilities such as benches, tables and litter bins.

4.2.7. Treasure hunting and metal detecting still pose a real threat to the archaeological monument. In coordination with the conservation agencies and legislative bodies, suitable measures should be developed and enforced in order to counter this threat to The Danube Limes in Bavaria.

5. Aims

5.1. The process of increasing public awareness

5.1.1. Due to the historical importance of the ancient frontier of the Roman Empire and the role it played in the subsequent development of Europe, efforts to present information about the monument must be continually optimized.

5.1.2. It must be one of the most urgent aims of the Management Plan to establish awareness within the general public, and especially along The Danube Limes in Bavaria, of the importance of this World Heritage Site.

5.2. Protection and care, research and presentation

5.2.1. It is the duty of the Management Plan to further develop and strengthen the positive interaction between protection and care, research and presentation.

5.2.2. It is intended to intensify activity based on best-practice examples for protection, care, research and presentation along the entire stretch of The Danube Limes in Bavaria. As a grouping of the local community interests, the German Limes Road Association (*Deutsche Limes-Straße e.V.*) plays a very important role in the touristic presentation of the monument.

5.2.3. Care, research and presentation plans are to be coordinated with the German Limes Commission and determined based on an overriding regional concept. Measures regarding the conservation, restoration, reconstruction, construction of replicas and a conservational covering of archaeological monuments along The Danube Limes in Bavaria are to be carried out in accordance with the guidelines established in Part B.

5.2.4. The coordination of the international partners within the nominated World Heritage *Frontiers of the Roman Empire - The Danube Limes (Western Segment)* is of especial importance as they are all part of the same nominated World Heritage Site.

5.2.5. In an increasingly global world, the coordination with additional international partners, particularly those in the 'Frontiers of the Roman Empire World Heritage Cluster' which unites all sites in the area of the Roman border that are inscribed on the World Heritage List, or where there is interest in a segment's inscription, plays a special role.

5.3. Development possibilities

5.3.1. Scientific research on The Danube Limes in Bavaria will continue with selective projects along its entire length. These projects must conform with the highest international standards and agreements. Their results form a basis for the sustainable protection, care and development of The Danube Limes in Bavaria. The presentation of The Danube Limes in Bavaria is to be bound within a supra-regional context.

5.4. Guidelines

This Management Plan for The Danube Limes in Bavaria is based on the guidelines set out below. The plan intends to:

- 5.4.1.** show ways of managing all future changes to the advantage of The Danube Limes in Bavaria and its surroundings and thus secure its existence for future generations;
- 5.4.2.** contribute towards the preservation of the Outstanding Universal Value of the nominated World Heritage Site and to demonstrate the historical context;
- 5.4.3.** create awareness for the criteria that all plans to develop and present the World Heritage take care that the authenticity and integrity of the nominated World Heritage Site remain intact;
- 5.4.4.** encourage the preservation of the experience produced by the many different landscapes along The Danube Limes in Bavaria by means of future-oriented and integrative development measures;
- 5.4.5.** help in the use of public and private resources in order to improve the protection and development of the cultural landscape along The Danube Limes in Bavaria;
- 5.4.6.** encourage the search for ways to protect the nominated World Heritage Site from the effects of construction or other damaging influences;
- 5.4.7.** increase public awareness of the archaeological and historical value of the component parts as well as of the nominated World Heritage Site as a whole;
- 5.4.8.** identify strategies with which the ability to experience The Danube Limes in Bavaria can be improved;
- 5.4.9.** encourage an improved accessibility of The Danube Limes in Bavaria;
- 5.4.10.** support efforts that seek to enable local inhabitants to benefit from the economic advantages of tourism;
- 5.4.11.** seek to achieve a spirit of partnership and agreement among those people and institutions, public and private, which concern themselves with The Danube Limes in Bavaria and its surroundings.

6. Basis

6.1. Compilation of data

6.1.1. The basis of the protection and care of every monument is the comprehensive knowledge about it. Essential for this is the establishment of an inventory. Information about the exact location and condition of an object is particularly important.

6.1.2. The setting up of a specialist information system (Fachinformationssystem FIS) of the Bavarian State Conservation Office for The Danube Limes in Bavaria has made it possible to put together different types of information while observing privacy protection regulations. At the core of this system are detailed maps. The boundaries of the nominated area and the surrounding buffer zones are recorded on these maps.

6.1.3. Information from this database is made available by the Bavarian State Conservation Office when there is a reasonable need for future planning and monitoring purposes, in accordance with privacy protection regulations.

6.1.4. Data that is relevant for archaeology or conservation purposes shall be entered into the comprehensive geographical information system Corpus Limitis Imperii Romani (CLIR), which is currently being set up. CLIR may be accessed and used by all interested parties.

6.2. Research principles

6.2.1. In order to broaden our knowledge of the World Heritage Site, continuous scientific research of The Danube Limes in Bavaria is necessary. Methods which cause no disturbance are to take priority. As part of future research, for example, comprehensive prospections are necessary, with the aim of gaining more precise information on the exact location of The Danube Limes in Bavaria and its dimensions (also outside of the areas to be nominated). The documentation of sites that are unknown or not sufficiently examined is another research project with very high priority.

6.2.2. All actions requiring approval or permission that are taken in connection with research on The Danube Limes in Bavaria require coordination with the Bavarian State Conservation Office relevant Protection Agencies.

6.2.3. Excavations on The Danube Limes in Bavaria should only be permitted if it is clear that they are to be carried out in accordance with the principle of permanent conservation and protection of the monument's fabric. The necessity of an excavation is to be weighed against the principle of preserving the monument in its present condition, taking into account all existing sources and knowledge.

6.2.4. Furthermore, increased efforts should be made to tap the full scientific potential provided by a systematic reevaluation of so-called "old excavations".

6.3. International cooperation

6.3.1. In order to further develop the Management Plan for The Danube Limes in Bavaria it is necessary to work closely with those persons responsible for the management of the nominated World Heritage Site *Frontiers of the Roman Empire - The Danube Limes (Western Segment)* in those State Parties where the other parts of the monument are located.

6.3.2. The strategic management of the nominated World Heritage falls to the Intergovernmental Committee for the Frontiers of the Roman Empire - The Danube Limes IGC DL. It serves as UNESCO's contact partner for all international questions. From the German side, a representative of the responsible Bavarian ministry and a leading responsible member of the Bavarian State Conservation Office will be members.

6.3.3. The operative management of the nominated World Heritage Site The Danube Limes in Bavaria shall be carried out by the Management Group for the Frontiers of the Roman Empire - The Danube Limes MG DL. From the German side, the executive management of the German Limes Commission, the Limes Coordinator in Bavaria and the executive management of the German Limes Road Association (*Verein Deutsche Limesstraße e.V.*) are members.

6.3.4. Within an extended international framework, the involved parties of the 'Frontiers of the Roman Empire World Heritage Cluster' act in close cooperation with the representatives of all of the sections of the Roman boundary that are inscribed on the World Heritage List or are interested in an inscription.

6.3.5. In accordance with the considerations of the Thematic Study "*The Frontiers of the Roman Empire*" it is intended to expand the nominated World Heritage Site *Frontiers of the Roman Empire - The Danube Limes (Western Segment)* to include the eastern section of The Danube Limes as far as the Black Sea. This process is supported by a group of international scientists and monument protection specialists (the Bratislava Group).

6.3.6. International communication till now on the subject of the care, research and presentation of monuments has proven to be effective and should be continued.

7. Protection and conservation

The World Heritage Site and its buffer zones are defined in such a manner that it is possible for the responsible parties at the locations to further develop processes for the protection, research and accessibility of the monument.

7.1. The monument in unbuilt areas

7.1.1. All known nominated underground sections of The Danube Limes in Bavaria as well as those which are visible above ground are already legally protected as archaeological and architectural monuments. This provides sufficient protection.

7.1.2. A sustainable preservation of the nominated World Heritage Site is dependent on the landowners, communities, the Bavarian Protection Agencies and the Bavarian State Conservation Office. At their disposal they have not only such instruments as the Bavarian Monument Protection Law, but also planning legislation, land use laws and nature conservation laws.

7.1.3. It makes sense, wherever possible, to strive towards building up a network of interests with nature and landscape conservationists, as well as pursuing the notion of an integrated protection scheme of cultural landscapes. Schemes which are intended to serve the protection of archaeological and architectural monuments have a better chance of success if they are bundled together with other legally conservation interests.

7.1.4. At many component parts of The Danube Limes in Bavaria and the respective buffer zones there exist close relationships between the conservation of the monument and the protection and conservation of the landscape. Protection and conservation of the landscape simultaneously saves the surroundings of the component parts of The Danube Limes in Bavaria from inappropriate construction activities and adverse effects on its visual appearance. This also serves to preserve the monument's characteristic features. This is particularly true for expansive arable acreage.

7.1.5. In special cases it is necessary and meaningful to provide additional protection for certain areas of The Danube Limes in Bavaria by acquiring them with the aim of leaving them unused, either with public funding or through any other institution which has an interest in the protection and conservation of The Danube Limes in Bavaria. This is particularly to be considered in situations when a compromise between a utilisation which would damage the monument and the interest in its preservation is not otherwise possible.

7.1.6. The acquisition of larger areas of land should be accompanied by a plan for the sustainable conservation and development of the acquired monument.

7.1.7. As part of a developed cultural landscape, The Danube Limes in Bavaria must be protected within this context. This requires a knowledge of the surrounding cultural landscape and its individual elements, as well as a holistic view of the component parts of The Danube Limes in Bavaria in the cultural landscape.

7.2. The monument in built-up areas

7.2.1. Sections of The Danube Limes in Bavaria which are located in built-up areas are nevertheless part of the nominated World Heritage Site. Even when in part only very small remains of The Danube Limes in Bavaria are visible in these areas, they can nevertheless be of great archaeological value.

7.2.2. Generally the same conservational regulations apply here as in areas which are not built-up.

7.2.3. The main challenge to a successful protection of The Danube Limes in Bavaria in built-up areas is the frequently imprecise knowledge of the monument's remains and their covering over with historical or modern structures.

7.2.4. Even in places where it appears to be difficult to experience the Roman frontier fortifications, there is a possibility of improving the understanding of The Danube Limes in Bavaria over the long term.

7.2.5. Therefore, it is particularly important to protect the remains of The Danube Limes in Bavaria in urban areas in accordance with the prevailing criteria. The main aim must in the first place be the conservation of the existing fabric of the monument.

7.2.6. The protection of known remains of the monument in settled areas must be improved. In order to achieve this, local authorities should develop and implement comprehensive planning guidelines, such as land use plans or relevant bylaws, as early as possible.

7.2.7. One possibility would be to mark known Roman building axes and road alignments. It is not necessary that remains of the monument still exist within the area which is being marked - or that they belong to the nominated areas.

7.2.8. The basis for this could be the systematic purchase of selected plots of land, including plots in settled areas. This could protect them from being built on, and could also create open areas.

7.2.9. Over the medium and long term, it will be attempted to improve the public's perception of the connection between the locations of the component parts through appropriate measures. This also holds true for urban areas.

8. Monument presentation

8.1. Objectives

- 8.1.1.** The goal of a regionally structured presentation at The Danube Limes in Bavaria is to provide attractive and target group-oriented offers for the interested public.
- 8.1.2.** To this end, The Danube Limes in Bavaria as part of the nominated World Heritage Site *Frontiers of the Roman Empire - The Danube Limes (Western Segment)* should be presented in an international, regional and local context.

8.2. Implementation

- 8.2.1.** Part C of this Management Plan outlines the basic parameters of a future strategic presentation plan (Interpretation Framework) for the Bavarian and Austrian portion of the nominated World Heritage *Frontiers of the Roman Empire - The Danube Limes* (Danube Limes Interpretation Framework DLIF).
- 8.2.2.** The entire Framework is an integral part of this Management Plan.
- 8.2.3.** This is a content-related framework with suggestions for museums and other presentation sites.
- 8.2.4.** The implementation of the basic parameters of the DLIF at the local and regional levels is a duty of the responsible parties of each presentation site.

9. Tourism

9.1. The principles

- 9.1.1.** As is the case with many other historical sites, tourism is an important factor in the presentation of The Danube Limes in Bavaria.
- 9.1.2.** The requirements of tourism must take second place behind the conservation of the monument and its surroundings, in accordance with the aims of UNESCO.
- 9.1.3.** An appropriate presentation of the nominated World Heritage Site is required for German and foreign visitors. Furthermore, an infrastructure is needed that provides adequate access to and from the monument and tourist facilities in the localities.
- 9.1.4.** It is in the interest of all neighbours of the component parts of The Danube Limes in Bavaria to exert influence on all measures connected with the development of tourism, in order that these future developments may bring it advantages rather than disadvantages.

9.2. Goals

- 9.2.1.** All measures taken to develop tourism to The Danube Limes in Bavaria must be made in a way which is reconcilable with the monument itself. They must not harm the fabric or the quality of the monument in any way, or restrict research schemes, but instead they should be planned in such a way that they improve the visitor's understanding of The Danube Limes in Bavaria and its conservation.
- 9.2.2.** All future measures should be coordinated in a manner appropriate to the content and appearance of the component parts and should comply with uniform standards.
- 9.2.3.** Further development of tourism to The Danube Limes in Bavaria should meet with the acceptance of the local community. It is intended to plan all measures wherever possible in consultation with the parties concerned.
- 9.2.4.** Tourism schemes on The Danube Limes in Bavaria should aim where possible to generate income for the local population.

9.3. Achievement of measures

- 9.3.1.** The Bavarian State Conservation Office and the German Limes Commission (see 10.3.) support the communities and touristic institutions in the further touristic development of The Danube Limes in Bavaria by providing advice. They act as point of contact and cooperation partners.
- 9.3.2.** The Bavarian State Conservation Office and the Protection Agencies have an advisory role in the development of new presentation projects. These include the provision of factual information as well as a quality control of the content.
- 9.3.3.** The various museums and the Limes Information Centers are an important factor in a successful development of tourism and the presentation of The Danube Limes in Bavaria.

9.3.4. In a part of the counties, towns and communities along The Danube Limes in Bavaria the German Limes Road Association (*Verein Deutsche Limes-Straße e.V.*) already provides a cooperation for the implementation of the above-mentioned goals. An extension of the associations' activities throughout the entire Danube Limes in Bavaria is under consideration. Among other activities in the field of tourism, the association is responsible for public relations, the publication of touristic information, press relations, the coordination of advertising measures, general information, lodging information and the regulation of the flow of visitors. Besides museums and Limes Information Centres tourism hinges on the comprehensive work of The German Limes Road Association as a first point of contact for potential visitors and interested guests. Due to its importance it is a permanent member of the German Limes Commission.

9.3.5. An important aspect of the presentation of The Danube Limes in Bavaria is the secured provision of visitor assistance through qualified and trained personnel, whereby in Bavaria the "Limes Cicerones of the German Limes Commission" play an important role. They are trained and given additional advanced training courses in close cooperation with the Bavarian State Conservation Office. The training is based around the examination regulations of the German Limes Commission.

9.3.6. Societies, schools, regional or local initiatives may still look after individual archaeological sites along The Danube Limes in Bavaria. All activities are to be coordinated with the German Limes Commission and the Bavarian State Conservation Office.

9.3.7. Owners and occupants of property within the nominated World Heritage Site live in close contact with visitors to the site. Their understanding and acceptance should always be sought.

9.4 Instruments

9.4.1. In case of the extension of its activities The German Limes Road Association (*Verein Deutsche Limes-Straße e.V.*) would be in charge of sign-posting the component parts of The Danube Limes in Bavaria along the connecting roads and bicycle path, in cooperation with the local authorities and district administration. Single and group travellers should thus be able reach almost every site along The Danube Limes in Bavaria by following the signs. Here, too, the Bavarian State Conservation Office works together with The German Limes Road Association, other relevant associations and the respective local authorities to plan appropriate routes.

9.4.2. Measures of conservation, restoration, reconstruction, rebuilding or conservational covering of archaeological monuments along the component parts of The Danube Limes in Bavaria are carried out in accordance with the guidelines outlined in Part B. The text is based on the relevant portion of the Management Plan for the Upper German-Raetian Limes. The guidelines in Part B are an integral part of the Management Plan.

10. Realization of measures of the Management Plan

10.1. Participating institutions and persons

10.1.1. The legislative and administrative responsibilities for the conservation of monuments and therefore for the preservation of The Danube Limes in Bavaria are regulated within the legal system of the German Federal Republic and the Free State of Bavaria.

10.1.2. There is a fundamental public interest in the protection and conservation of its monuments, as stated in the Bavarian Monument Protection Law. Those responsible for the preservation of The Danube Limes in Bavaria are first and foremost the landowners on whose property the World Heritage Site is located.

10.1.3. The Lower Protection Agencies, and where applicable the local archaeologists, are in general responsible for the implementation of the relevant regulations to protect the monument. Exceptions may be applied, for example regarding projects affecting monuments that are owned by the state, or which involve planning laws. In such cases, they can receive support from the Bavarian State Conservation Office or the relevant state ministry as the Highest Protection Authority.

10.1.4. The Bavarian State Conservation Office is an expert agency. It studies The Danube Limes in Bavaria and determines what remains of its fabric and what is therefore an archaeological or an architectural monument according to the Bavarian Monument Protection Law. It is responsible for some of the public relations work; it advises the owners of monuments and produces a written comment on all plans and measures that involve The Danube Limes in Bavaria.

10.1.5. Additionally, the Limes Coordinator of the Bavarian State Conservation Office serves as contact person. He/she is involved with the protection, research and presentation of The Danube Limes in Bavaria. The responsible Protection Agencies ensure the participation of the Limes Coordinator in all relevant activities they are involved in.

10.1.6. The responsibility for all measures connected with development and tourism along The Danube Limes in Bavaria is allocated according to the outlined rules.

10.1.7. The implementation of the Management Plan requires the cooperation between the landowners, local authorities, county authorities and the Bavarian State Conservation Office. Nature parks and relevant associations are also important factors for the successful implementation of the Management Plan.

10.1.8. For decades, there has also been a close and successful cooperation between the Bavarian State Conservation Office, local archaeologists, relevant associations, and local interest groups. The important role which these play in the protection and conservation as well as in the presentation of The Danube Limes in Bavaria is supported by the Bavarian State Conservation Office.

10.2. Implementation of the Management Plan

10.2.1. The importance of The Danube Limes in Bavaria and the contents and aims of this Management Plan will be publicised through greater use of suitable media.

10.2.2. Every individual measure carried out at the nominated World Heritage Site which affects its fabric or its protected appearance will be coordinated with, and approved by, the Bavarian State Conservation Office and the Lower Protection Agencies. Overlapping or fundamental measures must first be evaluated by the German Limes Commission.

10.2.3. Before measures are taken that alter the fabric or optical appearance of the monument, the relevant part of the monument must be expertly documented and a scientific evaluation carried out.

10.2.4. The main focus of attention must be on the prevention or limitation of possible damage. It is intended to make significant sections of the monument into public property, either by means of regional or local planning procedures, or through acquisition.

10.2.5. In cases where the course of The Danube Limes in Bavaria or the ascertained sites of its forts have not yet been included, or their entries are incomplete or erroneously recorded in the land use and development plans or other planning documents, these should be corrected in the course of their updating.

10.2.6. In the case of the reallocation of land rights and use, the perception and understanding of the component parts of The Danube Limes in Bavaria should be retained or restored. This will require a close cooperation between owners and users on the one hand, and the appropriate Protection Agencies and institutions on the other hand.

10.2.7. The question of whether regionally important land use plans could have an adverse effect on The Danube Limes in Bavaria is being examined in cooperation with the Bavarian State Conservation Office and the Protection Agencies.

10.2.8. The Protection Agencies, as the parties responsible for public interests, are to insure that the core and buffer zones are included into regional planning procedures and zoning plans.

10.2.9. In order to reduce damage caused by quarrying, agriculture and forestry, contacts between the responsible public offices and people concerned will be intensified, in order to develop in cooperation a catalogue of measures within the framework of future land use plans.

10.2.10. During the implementation of regional or local protection or information schemes, the understanding and perception of The Danube Limes in Bavaria in built-up areas should be increased where possible by marking known buried structures, and at the same time ways should be found to remodel sections which were previously built upon.

10.2.11. Particular attention should be paid to topics connected with the economic situation: ecology and nature conservation, green tourism etc. Facilities which are functionally linked with The Danube Limes in Bavaria may be incorporated in the process and wherever possible a cooperation should be established with other, compatible concepts.

10.2.12. Among the important research assignments at The Danube Limes in Bavaria is the improvement of our knowledge about the topography of the individual sites:

10.2.13. Further touristic development at The Danube Limes in Bavaria should be planned in close cooperation between the Bavarian State Conservation Office, the Limes Coordinator, the museums, the local archaeologists on the one hand, and The German Limes Road Association (*Verein Deutsche Limes-Straße e.V.*), the nature parks and special-interest associations, the individual local authorities as well as other relevant associations and interest groups.

10.2.14. Plans and results that could seriously affect the World Heritage Site or the protection of its buffer zones should be examined within the framework of the German Limes Commission. The latter shall inform, when necessary, the state ministry responsible for monument protection and the German representative in the Intergovernmental Committee for the Frontiers of the Roman Empire - The Danube Limes IGC DL.

10.3. Coordination through the German Limes Commission DLK

10.3.1. The coordination of recommendations and strategies in this Management Plan is the responsibility of the German Limes Commission. Its office is the contact for all of the above-mentioned institutions and persons. The state of Bavaria has set aside sufficient funds and personnel for this purpose.

10.3.2. The German Limes Commission plays a consultative role in the further development of the protection concept and develops guidelines together with other institutions.

10.3.3. The tasks of the German Limes Commission include the strategic development and coordination of all research activities and the bundling of and approval of research questions. In addition, the German Limes Commission provides expert opinions on all major excavation projects conducted along The Danube Limes in Bavaria.

- ◆ Wherever the extent of the substance of the archaeological monument is not precisely known, increased use should be made of non-destructive prospecting methods (such as surface surveying, aerial archaeology, geophysics, and airborne laser scanning).
- ◆ Future research projects on The Danube Limes in Bavaria should pay increased attention to aspects and questions of the preservation of archaeological monuments. On the other hand, work on the archives and collections should also be a central aspect.
- ◆ In built-up areas a detailed registration of the monument's substance through a cadaster may be of help.

10.3.4. In the case of development and infrastructure plans, the German Limes Commission will provide advice when requested to the responsible authorities. This occurs in close cooperation with the Limes Coordinator.

10.3.5. The German Limes Commission provides the responsible parties with the existing strategies for the further development of The Danube Limes in Bavaria.

10.3.6. The German Limes Commission represents the German interests in the World Heritage on both national and international levels.

Part B - Guidelines for the conservation, restoration, reconstruction, rebuilding and conservational covering of the archaeological monuments of The Danube Limes in Bavaria

1. Preamble

The Danube Limes in Bavaria forms, together with its forts and other structures a unique cultural monument and an irreplaceable historical document. In adherence with the Bavarian Monument Protection Law and both national and international standards, the protection of the monument's remains should be given high priority. This is to be taken into consideration during the planning and execution of all projects on the monument or in its vicinity. The protection of the monument's remains involves primarily the preservation of the surviving original fabric and of the appearance of the monument, as it has been bequeathed to us, within the landscape (authenticity and integrity).

Future actions which involve The Danube Limes in Bavaria and its environs must be based on the Management Plan and conform to the maintenance and development plans of The Danube Limes in Bavaria. Furthermore, they must be coordinated, under the terms of the Bavarian Monument Protection Law, with the relevant agencies, who advice and permit such actions. Under no circumstances may they be allowed to impair the Outstanding Universal Value of the nominated World Heritage Site. In case of conflict, the Deutsche Limeskommission (DLK) must be involved in the proceedings.

The higher the quality of a site or part of the monument with regard to its condition, tangibility or scientific value, the more restrictively any requests for modifications must be handled. Within the most valuable sections of The Danube Limes in Bavaria reconstruction and rebuilding are generally out of the question.

The following chapters are in accordance with the respective guidelines of the German Limes Commission for the Upper German-Raetian Limes as a part of the World Heritage Site "*Frontiers of the Roman Empire*" (<http://www.deutsche-limeskommission.de/fileadmin/dlk/images/dlk/pdfs/Management-Plan-2010-2015.pdf>, pp. 58-61).

2. Definitions

These definitions apply in the following text:

Conservation is an action which serves to prevent deterioration of the fabric of the monument, for instance cleaning and consolidation. Alterations in the fabric do not exceed those which are technically necessary.

Restoration is the return of an existing structure to a documented former condition by the removal of elements added later, or by the reassembly of existing components without using new material, except for the purpose of consolidation and stabilisation.

Reconstruction is the building up of an existing structure into what is deduced as having been its earlier condition, adding (in contrast to restoration) comparable new materials and using appropriate working techniques.

Rebuilding is the creation of a new building on the basis of existing documentation and conclusions which may be drawn from it.

Conservational covering is a reversible covering with soil or other materials. This includes ground modelling and covering over.

Reversible is applied to such actions which do not affect the original fabric, do or which no damage to it and which can later be removed without any adverse effects.

3. General parameters

For reasons related to the preservation of The Danube Limes in Bavaria, our limited knowledge about it, and its character as part of the cultural landscape, any changes to the monument should generally be limited to works of conservation and restoration. Suitable city and landscape management schemes could make it possible once again to visualise and understand individual sections of The Danube Limes in Bavaria.

Basically, it can be argued that the monument's present condition, i.e. as a ruin, is its only authentic condition. That which has been destroyed, is lost. It is our duty to preserve the status quo of the monument's general appearance. Anything else would be detrimental to the authenticity and integrity of the monument, the decay of which must be respected as an integral part of historical "coming and going". Thus, it is necessary to consider before any possible changes whether such an action is actually necessary. In any case, the present status must be documented in accordance with current scientific standards.

Conservation, restoration and conservational covering are actions which serve to preserve the monument or to save its fabric. They must take preference over actions which affect the substance itself.

In exceptional cases it may seem advisable to carry out an action which goes beyond conservation and restoration. This is possible if in a specific place on the monument didactical considerations make it seem necessary to do more in order to present the monument in the spirit of the World Heritage. Only in this case can reconstructions or rebuilding be accepted. Such schemes require discussion beforehand which should be as broadly based as possible. They should also be assessed by independent experts. Only then can a valid, preservation-oriented decision be made.

Abstract and modelled solutions and virtual presentations for the purpose of visualisation preserve the original fabric and are a valid alternative to physical reconstruction.

Reconstruction and rebuilding

- ◆ must take place in accordance with national and international guidelines;
- ◆ must preserve the historical importance of the site and its surroundings;
- ◆ may not take place until a complete scientific documentation of the area concerned has been carried out and evaluated;
- ◆ must be based on sound scientific evidence and be the result of an experimental re-enactment of ancient methods;
- ◆ are presentations in model form, and therefore an accumulation of similar forms in any one area should be avoided;

- ◆ should in principle be effected using original techniques and with materials comparable to the original, whenever this is possible. Financial considerations do not justify the use of other types of materials;
- ◆ are intended to increase understanding. Hypotheses should be clearly distinguishable and necessitate the presentation, documentation and publication of any findings or results gained during their implementation;
- ◆ must be so designed that their construction and sustainable maintenance are guaranteed;
- ◆ may not be used as a reason for excavation;
- ◆ are to be rejected as copies of constructions which already exist.

The basis for each action is the understanding of the monument. This encompasses not only areas above and below ground, but also the area surrounding it in the sense of its being a hereditary and historically evolved cultural landscape. Any evaluation should take into account the archaeological potential and the historical and contemporary importance as well as aesthetic, scenic and nature conservation values. Any action must be preceded by a thorough documentation of the status quo.

All measures taken within the area of the nominated World Heritage Site the Danube Limes in Bavaria must conform with national and international quality standards. The plan for each project must make absolutely clear in what manner its implementation would affect the authenticity and integrity of the monument. Implementation must take into account all the given guidelines and have a positive influence on the importance of The Danube Limes in Bavaria. Before implementation, all projects must be agreed upon by the relevant protection agencies and require authorisation within the terms of the Bavarian Monument Protection Law.

The same care which is given to the conception of a scheme must also be exercised with regard to its sustainability. The basis for this should be a maintenance plan agreed upon with the Bavarian State Conservation Office (Limes Coordinator). Repairs and maintenance work may only be carried out by qualified persons under expert supervision. Sufficient tangible means must be made available for maintenance as well as for the repair of unforeseen damage.

4. Guidelines for future actions

The following guidelines apply in particular:

- ◆ all actions must have a direct regional and historical link with the corresponding
- ◆ section of the World Heritage Site.
- ◆ information boards should be presented as uniformly as possible, in accordance with the guidelines for The Danube Limes that are to be formed.
- ◆ any planting done for the purpose of visualisation must not damage the fabric of the monument.
- ◆ conservational covering must not lead to a loss of authenticity by creating new, artificial monuments.
- ◆ any new materials used must be clearly distinguishable from the original fabric.
- ◆ in, or near, the few places that have survived more or less intact and undisturbed in the landscape, any kind of reconstruction or rebuilding should be avoided completely.
- ◆ reconstruction and rebuilding are generally only to be accepted on sites which have already been completely excavated and/or where the *in situ* findings have been largely destroyed and/or where modern-day use of the surrounding area has made a visualisation particularly difficult.
- ◆ reconstruction and rebuilding in the core area of the World Heritage Site must be designed to be reversible.
- ◆ with the aim of gaining insight through experimental research, copies of existing reconstructions or rebuilding are to be opposed.

5. International Regulations

In addition, all actions must conform with international standards as laid down in the following conventions and sets of guidelines:

Charter of Venice 1964:

International charter on the conservation and restoration of monuments and ensembles.

Charta of Burra 1979:

Charter for the conservation of places of cultural significance

Charter of Lausanne 1990:

Charter for the protection and care of the archaeological heritage.

Convention of Malta 1992:

European convention for the protection of the archaeological heritage.

The Nara document on authenticity 1994.

Charter of Riga on authenticity and historical reconstruction in relation to the cultural heritage 2000.

Part C – Danube Limes

Interpretation Framework (DLIF)

The Danube Frontier in Austria and Bavaria: Frontline and Stronghold of the Roman Empire

On November 17th, 2015 the 38th UNESCO General Conference in Paris adopted the “Recommendation concerning the protection and promotion of museums and collections, their diversity and their role in society”¹. This important document uses the term ‘heritage’ for tangible and intangible values as well as cultural heritage as included in the UNESCO culture conventions. Paragraph 10 invites member states to “...encourage museums to actively interpret and disseminate knowledge on collections, monuments and sites” and therefore aims to bridge the gap between museums and their collections and the relevant sites. Communication, education and audience development are identified in the document as further important functions. Taking account of these recommendations, the DLIF offers for the first time comprehensive transnational strategies and policies for interpretation on the Danube Limes in Austria and Bavaria.

1. Definitions

1.1. Danube Limes Interpretation Framework (DLIF) – Aims and Strategies

- ◆ The DLIF is a guidance document with advisory status for interpretation and access to the monuments of the nominated property and thematically connected museums. All content should be continually reviewed in accordance with the latest standards of archaeological research.
- ◆ The aim of the DLIF is to increase awareness of the Bavarian-Austrian Danube Limes Section of the FRE (DLAB) for local, regional, national and global audiences, in accordance with the OUV.
- ◆ The DLAB DLIF is to be seen as complementary to the Interpretation Framework for the Raetian Limes².
- ◆ The main goal of the DLIF is the enhancement of intellectual access to sites and museums as places for lifelong learning and education.
- ◆ The DLIF proposes a structure for interpretation comprising local, regional and supra-regional levels and relevant themes that can be adapted according to local needs and political circumstances.
- ◆ The DLIF is based strictly on archaeological and educational evaluations of relevant sites of the DLAB and of associated finds in terms of their potential to explain the DLAB to all members of the public.
- ◆ While taking into consideration UNESCO’s program on World Heritage and Sustainable Tourism and relevant decisions of the World Heritage Committee (Cf. 34 COM 5f.2), the DLIF is not intended as a strategic concept for international, regional or local tourism development.

¹ <http://unesdoc.unesco.org/images/0024/002433/243325e.pdf> (22.06.2016).

² http://www.museen-in-bayern.de/uploads/media/MH_44_Sonderdruck.pdf (15.11.2015).

- ◆ The recommendations of the DLIF are based on:
 - the importance of authenticity for the DLAB. Each visitor site must preserve and convey its own value and authenticity as well as that of the monument in its entirety and it must contribute to the development of the general public's understanding and appreciation of the DLAB.
 - the content and the spirit of national and international principles. Any future activities in connection with displays and attractions must take into consideration all existing agreements. The most important of these principles are set out in:
 - European convention for the protection of the archaeological heritage – the Convention of Malta,
 - Code of Ethics – International Council of Museums 1986 in its latest edition from 8th October 2004,
 - Recommendation concerning the protection and promotion of museums and collections, their diversity and their role in society from 17th November 2015 (cf. the preamble of present document),
 - Museums Association (UK), code of Ethics in its latest edition of 5th November 2015³
 - Network of European Museum Organisations (NEMO), Policy Statement from 20th August 2015⁴,
 - Procedural methods to be used in conservation, restoration, reconstruction, rebuilding and covering (for conservation purposes) of archaeological monuments of the DLAB – an integral part of the Management Plan.
- ◆ The aims and strategies of the DLIF as a Museums and Visitor Attractions Plan will be continually developed as an advisory document, in accordance with the latest standards of archaeological research and of international standards of interpretation.
- ◆ All content will be continually reviewed and the plan updated at regular intervals. In order to guarantee standards of display, presentation and visitor guidance which are commensurate with UNESCO World Heritage it is necessary to coordinate all activities with the appropriate ministries and authorities of the individual Federal States.
- ◆ The Maintenance and Development Plans of the individual Federal States define more precisely the proposals made in the DLIF and regulate the implementation at regional and local levels.

1.2. DLIF – Validity Area

- ◆ The DLIF comprises the Roman River Frontier along the Upper Danube between Bad Gögging (Germany) and Bad Deutsch-Altenburg (Austria), covering four different administrative regions (Bavaria/D; Upper Austria/A; Lower Austria/A; Vienna/A).
- ◆ The DLIF covers three Roman provinces: Raetia, Noricum and the western part of Pannonia Superior.
- ◆ The three provinces differ in their historical development. This transnational / international interpretation approach sees the DLAB as a historical entity comprising several component parts that once belonged together organically by geography and political history in Roman times.

³ <http://www.museumsassociation.org/download?id=1155827> (24.05.2016);

<http://www.museumsassociation.org/download?id=1173810> (24.05.2016)

⁴ http://www.ne-mo.org/fileadmin/Dateien/public/NEMO_Statements/NEMO_Policy_Statement_082015.pdf (21.10.2015)

1.3. DLIF – Audience Development and addressees

- ◆ The DLIF offers archaeologically substantiated guidance in developing local and regional interpretation in the field of cultural, infrastructural and educational policies.
- ◆ The DLIF aims to foster understanding and enhance personal engagement of visitors and residents. Requirements of different target groups will receive special attention.
- ◆ The DLIF aims at managing the visitor flow taking into consideration seasonal variations in visitor pressure.
- ◆ The DLIF suggests local, regional and supra-regional interpretation levels and relevant themes which can be adapted according to local needs and political circumstances.
- ◆ Implementation of the DLIF on a local level should follow regional and national cultural legislation and strategies.

1.4. DLIF – Primary Concepts

Primary concepts contribute to the understanding of the FRE as a whole and encapsulate distinctive features for each national section under one headline. For the UK and German parts of the “Frontiers of the Roman Empire-WHS” the following primary concepts have been defined:

- ◆ Hadrian’s Wall: The North-West Frontier of the Roman Empire
- ◆ Antonine Wall: Rome’s Northern Frontier
- ◆ Upper German-Raetian Limes (ORL): A Frontier for Rome (Raetian Limes only)⁵

The Danube Limes in Austria and Bavaria was heavily fortified with four legionary bases (Regensburg; Enns/Albing; Vienna; Carnuntum) and witnessed frequent and significant military activity over a long period. The following primary concept, which expresses effectively the linear character of the river frontier and its military significance, has been agreed:

The Danube Frontier in Austria and Bavaria: Frontline and Stronghold of the Roman Empire

This primary concept may be relevant also to other sections of the Danube Limes in future nominations. We invite the State Parties concerned to participate in the further development of the DLIF.

⁵ http://www.museen-in-bayern.de/uploads/media/MH_44_Sonderdruck.pdf (15.11.2015)

2. Policies for Interpretation

Interpretation should follow best practice as advocated by the European Association for Heritage Interpretation⁶. The following guiding principles are proposed for the DLAB:

2.1. Key Principles

2.1.1. One Site, one lead theme

Each nominated site should focus on a lead theme which contributes to the primary concept. Criteria for the selection of lead themes are set out in section C 2.2. Lead themes can be supported by several sub-themes which contribute to the lead theme and provide connections with other DLAB sites.

2.1.2. Personal Engagement

“People take interest in things they can connect with (in a positive or negative way)⁷”

Interpretation in the sense used by the European Association for Heritage Interpretation and in the DLIF is more than the provision of information – good interpretation seeks to engage the visitor. Themes and topics that enable connections to be made with the personal lives, views and interests of local people and visitors help to enhance engagement and hence understanding. An emotional connection will foster personal motivation and participation in protecting the monuments.

2.1.3. Accessibility of museums and sites for Interpretation

Museums and other interpretation/information facilities as well as on-site signage and interpreted routes/paths should adopt the thematic approach of the DLIF and use the joint corporate design for the DLAB. To improve intellectual accessibility open source media are preferable. To improve physical accessibility every effort should be made to ensure public access to the property without disturbing or destroying the monuments.

2.1.4. UNESCO and OUV

To emphasize the significance of the DLAB as part of the transnational, serial “Frontiers of the Roman Empire” WHS, interpretation at individual sites will contribute through their lead and supporting themes to understanding of the OUV in its broadest sense. Wherever feasible interpretation will include explanation of the concept of World Heritage and of the wider objectives of UNESCO.

2.1.5. Different audiences and Learning

Sites and museums are places of lifelong learning, both formal and informal. Audience development strategies will help to reach new visitors and ensure the quality of interpretation for existing audiences. All sites should seek to undertake on-going research into existing and new/potential audiences and to reach out to new audiences and potential target groups wherever possible.

2.1.6. Multi-lingual approach and Multimedia

Newly established permanent exhibitions, multimedia (including virtual reconstructions), signage and websites should be available in German and English (and in other languages where appropriate). English versions must be proofread by Roman provincial archaeologists and native speakers.

⁶ <http://www.interpret-europe.net>

⁷ Quotation taken from “Hadrian’s Wall Interpretation Framework”.

2.2. Criteria for Selection of key themes and topics for interpretation

The identification and selection of key themes and topics for the DLIF is based on archaeological and historical information (e.g. re-use of fortification elements during the Middle Ages; distribution of military units; historical and epigraphic sources) and on interpretation principles and good practice.

2.2.1. Collection Focus

The various objects in museum collections should be evaluated with regard to their storytelling potential and possibilities for personal engagement. All objects have a variety of attributes (physical, social, functional, symbolic) that can be used to illustrate different themes and topics. The aim is to select objects that can effectively illustrate and bring to life stories and ideas.

2.2.2. Iconic Finds

Whenever possible, single “highlight objects” should support and illustrate key messages. Iconic finds help to enhance the identity of single sites.

2.2.3. Attributes

Attributes⁸ identified for the property are reflected in the thematic interpretation approach. They contribute to the selection of individual lead themes. The attributes “location and setting”, “construction and layout”, as well as “material and substance” are used as key assets for interpretation: Comparison of modern and Roman landscape can help in understanding the strategic significance of single military installations along the Roman Danube Frontier. This is of particular importance at the DLAB, as the ancient topographical features are preserved to a high degree. Outstanding topographical situations of selected sites may therefore be used to define a local interpretation lead theme.

2.2.4. Contribution of lead themes to the primary concept

The lead themes selected for each site should contribute to the understanding of the primary concept “The Danube Frontier in Bavaria and Austria: Frontline and Stronghold of the Roman Empire”.

2.2.5. Story telling

Good interpretation is driven by stories. People are more fascinated by stories than by facts. However, all good storytelling for heritage interpretation should be based on firm, authentic evidence. Storytelling is an effective means of connecting visitors’ contemporary experiences with sites and museum collections. Storytelling can be accomplished through a variety of media including text and illustrations, displays, live interpretation, re-enactment, audio-visual/multi-media, models etc.

⁸ op Guidelines, 82.

2.3. Interpretation Strategies

To make the complex Danube River Frontier system understandable to all interested members of the public, the following strategies were agreed on by the DLIF Group.

2.3.1. Interpretation Regions and regional interpretation access points

The whole length of the DLAB is sub-divided into interpretation regions, each of which represents an understandable “chapter” contributing to the primary concept “The Danube Frontier in Austria and Bavaria: Frontline and Stronghold of the Roman Empire”. Each “chapter” can be visited separately.

The proposed interpretation regions for the DLAB have been defined through evaluation of geographical core areas combined with key archaeological assets (sites and collections). The evaluation reflects the attributes identified for the DLAB as part of the FRE WHS. The interpretation regions do not take into account modern administrative or national borders. For each interpretation region a “regional access point” is identified taking into account location and accessibility.

Region 1 / Regensburg (wider area of Regensburg legionary fortress):

Lead theme: The Bavarian Legion

Interpretation Access Point: Regensburg, Historisches Museum.

Region 2 / Straubing - Künzing:

Lead theme: The Central Raetian Danube Frontier

Interpretation Access Point: Straubing, Gäubodenmuseum.

Region 3 / Passau – Linz:

Lead theme: Changing Concepts of Frontiers over time

Interpretation Access Point: Passau, Römermuseum Kastell Boiotro.

Region 4 / Enns – Albing (wider area of Enns legionary fortress):

Lead theme: LAURIACUM - The Legion’s influence on economy and culture

Interpretation Access Point: Enns, Museum Lauriacum.

Region 5 / Wallsee – Mautern:

Lead theme: Controlling the Landscape

Interpretation Access Point: Mautern, Römermuseum.

Region 6 / Traismauer – Klosterneuburg:

Lead theme: Monuments of Imperial Power

Interpretation Access Point: Klosterneuburg.

Region 7 / Vienna (wider area of Vienna legionary fortress):

Lead theme: VINDOBONA - The Legion’s influence on social life

Interpretation Access Point: Vienna, Römermuseum.

Region 8 / Petronell/Carnuntum - Bad Deutsch Altenburg (wider area of Carnuntum legionary fortress):

Lead theme: CARNUNTUM - Land of the Romans

Interpretation Access Point: Freilichtmuseum Petronell, Informationszentrum.

2.3.2. Levels of Interpretation

The museum categories proposed follow the established categories on the Upper-German-Raetian Limes (ORL). Due to the large number of well-preserved remains along the Austrian-Bavarian-Danube-Limes, a new interpretation category “*monumentum*” has been introduced. Accessibility for all members of the public, wherever feasible, is strongly recommended.

Level 1 / Supra-regional museums:

- ◆ Geographical coverage of specific landscape, river or regional sections of the DLAB
- ◆ Directed by archaeologists with qualifications in the archaeology of the Roman provinces
- ◆ Information about the principles of World Heritage

- ◆ Substantiated Information about the DLAB and the Frontiers of the Roman Empire in their entirety
- ◆ Thematic presentations about a supra-regional section of the DLAB and objects excavated there

Level 2 / Regional museums:

- ◆ Presentation of regional sections of the DLAB and local topographical characteristics
- ◆ Presentation of selected special themes

Level 3 / Local museums:

- ◆ Presentation of local topographical characteristics
- ◆ Presentation of local selected themes

Level 4 / monumentum or document

- ◆ The term “monument” or “document” is used exclusively for excavated or preserved remains displayed as key exhibits *in situ* within the nominated property.
- ◆ The established term “document”, used for *in situ* archaeological monuments within the city of Regensburg, will continue in use as an established brand within Regensburg only.
- ◆ Use of high quality interpretation (graphic or multimedia) is highly recommended.

Level 5 / Signage on-site:

- ◆ Future DLAB signage information on-site as well as archaeological hiking and cycling paths should follow best-practice-principles developed for the Upper German-Raetian-Limes and guidance provided by the European Association for Heritage Interpretation, especially with regard to the amount of text and communications design/branding⁹.
- ◆ Use of plain and understandable language is mandatory.
- ◆ All on-site-explanation must be bilingual (German / English). A third language can be added if necessary.
- ◆ Explanation may be supported by technical features, such as inside-outside-screens or “telescopes into the past”, as used for instance at Passau-Boiotro.

2.3.3. Archaeological Parks

The definition of “Archaeological Parks” follows the “Salalah recommendations” (First International Conference of ICOMOS on Archaeological Parks and Sites, 23.-25. February 2015, Salalah, Sultanate of Oman). An archaeological park consists of

- ◆ “Archaeological remains (below and above ground, movable and immovable) including archaeological surfaces. The archaeological park should have at least the size of the underground extent of the archaeological remains (archaeological site).
- ◆ A carefully designed landscape that will ensure protection of archaeological remains below and above ground surface, and effective interpretation of them to visitors.
- ◆ An area to which access is effectively regulated, with controlled entrances, surrounded by an adequate buffer zone
- ◆ An archaeological park is the link between scientific research and the public. It can be termed as a definable area, distinguished by the value of heritage resources and land related to such resources, having the potential to become an interpretive, educational and recreational resource for the public, which should be protected and conserved.”¹⁰

The “Archäologischer Park Carnuntum” is the largest archaeological park of Middle Europe. Elements include the Freilichtmuseum Petronell, the amphitheatre Petronell, the Heidentor as a landmark and the amphitheatre Bad Deutsch Altenburg. Carnuntum clearly illustrates the lead theme “Land of the Romans” identified above for interpretation region 8. The park strongly meets the criteria of Archaeological Park as defined under the “Salalah recommendations”. Modern reconstructions over Roman remains serve as buffer zones. Various interpretation levels may be combined within an archaeological park.

⁹ Cf. http://www.deutsche-limeskommission.de/fileadmin/dlk/images/dlk/pdfs/Richtlinien_fuer_Erklaerungstafeln_am_LIMES.pdf

¹⁰ <http://whc.unesco.org/en/news/1256>

2.3.4. Limes Information Centres (LIC)

In addition to presentations in museums, “Limes Information Centres”, preferably one in each Roman province covered by the DLAB, are strongly recommended. These “Limes Information Centres” will transmit the UNESCO World Heritage Idea and the general concept of the FRE as a WHS in particular, taking into account the specific characteristics of each Roman province concerned.

- ◆ LICs serve as low-threshold supra-regional gateways to the various interpretation offers.
- ◆ They deliver archaeologically substantiated contextual information concerning the concept of the “Frontiers-of-the-Roman-Empire-WHS” in order to enhance the visitor experience of the WHS and connected museums.
- ◆ LICs provide a concise and easily understandable overview of the Bavarian-Austrian Danube in the relevant area.
- ◆ LICs require professional archaeological support
- ◆ LICs must follow established best-practice-examples for interpretation centres¹¹.
- ◆ LICs are no substitute for museums and were consequently classified as “museumsähnliche Einrichtung” by the federal “conference of museum advisory bodies” (Konferenz der Museums-Beratungs-Institutionen der Länder/KMBL) at a national level in Germany.

- ◆ Establishment of LICs is recommended at the following locations:
- ◆ LIC Danube Limes Raetia: Straubing / D
- ◆ LIC Danube Limes Noricum: Enns / A
- ◆ LIC Danube Limes Pannonia Superior: Carnuntum / A

2.4. Awareness-Building strategies

Adequate actions to enhance public understanding of UNESCO values and the OUV and to ensure up-to-date-interpretation should be undertaken. Each visitor should have the opportunity to understand the Austrian-Bavarian Danube Limes in its entirety and to contribute to the development of the general public’s appreciation of the property.

2.4.1. Presentation and Collection Standards

ICOM-Statutes of 24th August 2007, Art. 3, section 1, define the basis of work in museums and collections. It is the duty of the museums to display artefacts found at the Austrian-Bavarian Danube Limes in the context of the UNESCO World Heritage Site “Frontiers of the Roman Empire” (FRE).

All museums along the DLAB will follow the ICOM Code of Ethics for Museums. Collection policies should follow the DLIF with regard to public presentation and display.

Special care will be taken in the conservation of objects, in improving storage conditions and in handling of human remains in accordance with international standards¹². Projects to promote good practice in the collection and handling of archaeological finds should be supported.

Existing national standards such as the “Österreichisches Museumsgütesiegel” (Austrian quality seal for museums) should be integrated into DLAB quality standards. Museums in Austria should try to achieve this national accreditation.

¹¹ http://www.museen-in-bayern.de/die-landesstelle/veroeffentlichungen/museum-heute/details-museum-heute/artikel/museum-heute-44juli-2013.html?tx_ttnews%5BbackPid%5D=349&cHash=cb1efbd52d9c845d2f9826f4396170d2 (15.11.2015)

¹² <https://www.britishmuseum.org/pdf/Human%20Remains%20policy%20July%202013%20FINAL.pdf> (15.11.2015)

2.4.2. Transnational Corporate identity and branding

Following the best-practice-example of a common corporate identity and branding on the Upper German-Raetian Limes (ORL) a joint CI for the Danube Limes in the two countries, will be used for signage, mobile devices, multimedia or print media.

2.4.3. Mobile devices and Multimedia

Best practice examples of smartphone applications already established in other parts of the “Frontiers of the Roman Empire WHS” (e.g. “Limes Middle Franconia Mobile”, “Mainlimes Mobile” and the “Antonine Wall” app currently under development), should be used as models for wider application.

To ensure that the World Heritage Site is accessible and enjoyable for a wide public, applications should be available in German and English free of charge using open-access-technologies. Virtual reconstructions of Roman architecture must comply with international standards, mainly the London and Sevilla Charters. New methods of interpretation like Geocaching provide opportunities to increase awareness of the need for the protection of the monuments.

2.4.4. Print media

Print media should use a common Corporate Design and reach different audiences. The priorities for print media are visitor orientation and interpretation in accordance with DLIF policies including comprehensible and coherent presentation of archaeological evidence and historical value.

2.5. National institutions and organisations for interpretation

This section gives an overview of national organisations responsible for the development of didactic interpretation for the general public.

2.5.1. Bayerisches Landesamt für Denkmalpflege, Landesstelle für die nichtstaatlichen Museen, Munich

As a service institution of the Free State of Bavaria, the Landesstelle (Bavarian Department for Museums)¹³, which is part of the Bavarian State Conservation office supports more than 1,250 non-state museums in Bavaria in planning and interpretation as well as in all issues of museum practice. The support of the non-state museums is laid down in article 12, paragraph 2,7 of the Bavarian Preservation of Historical Monuments Act (Bayerisches Denkmalschutzgesetz). The Landesstelle is responsible for financial support of non-State-run museum projects. Applications for support to the Bavarian Cultural Fund (Kulturfonds Bayern), Bavarian State Foundation (Bayerische Landesstiftung) and EU-Initiatives (e.g. programs EFRE and Leader+) are reviewed by the Landesstelle. The Landesstelle was responsible for the Bavarian part of the present joint Bavarian-Austrian Interpretation Framework.

2.5.2 Verbund Oberösterreichischer Museen (Upper Austria)

The association of Upper Austrian museums „Verbund Oberösterreichischer Museen“ was founded in 2001 as a non-profit organisation and is active in the realm of providing advice and service for their members, museums and collections all over Upper Austria. The main intention is improving the quality of exhibitions and collections. The association also supports the public relations of smaller museums – amongst others through the museum portal¹⁴ and the museums app¹⁵ of Upper Austria. Important current offers include several training modules (e.g. the training course “Museum Custodian”, the series of seminars “Museum plus” and “Research into local history” which deals with the essentials of historical research in the field of local history, and the seminar “Museum and Tourism”).

¹³ www.museen-in-bayern.de

¹⁴ <http://www.ooemuseumsverbund.at/>

¹⁵ <http://www.ooemuseumsverbund.at/museen/museums-app>

The association also started a web-based inventory database in 2014, which has been created together with the Upper Austrian Landesmuseum. Finally, another important realm is cultural mediation. A co-programme with the Johannes-Kepler-Universität Linz started in 2015 offers a seminar “Kulturvermittlung”.

The association “Verbund Oberösterreichischer Museen” will support the association “Museen am Donaulimes in Österreich” especially in the field of interpretation and in the field of public relations.

2.5.3. Museumsmanagement Niederösterreich GesmbH (Lower Austria)

The Museumsmanagement Niederösterreich GmbH is a company within the Kultur Region Niederösterreich GmbH. The Museumsmanagement Niederösterreich is a consulting and service office for about 750 museums, collections, exhibition houses and theme trails in Lower Austria. Its main function is documentation of museums and collections in Lower Austria as well as providing further education especially for volunteers who work in and for museums. The further education program includes two training courses, one for cultural mediation and one for future museum curators. There are also seminars, lectures and hands-on, practical workshops.

The Museumsmanagement arranges the annual museum day in Lower Austria, a meeting to encourage and accelerate communication between establishments, and organizes the formal administration of the funding for museums in Lower Austria. It publishes books and brochures to spread the diversity and richness of the museum landscape within Lower Austria.

The website¹⁶ lists all museums in Lower Austria and their events and exhibitions and provides information on further education and funding. It also presents topics for visitors and staff members of museums.

2.5.4. Association „Museen am Donaulimes in Österreich“, Enns

Members of this association are museums with Roman collections on the Danube Limes in Austria. The website www.donau-limes.at represents the museums and their exhibitions, provides information for visitors and activities. The main purpose of the association is to coordinate, improve and foster interpretation on the Danube Limes in Austria. The specific tasks are defined within the statutes¹⁷ and comprise the obligation to represent the interests of museums during the submission of the Management Plan of the nominated property „Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes in Austria and Bavaria“ and to work on the implementation and realization of the Management Plan. The association „Museen am Donaulimes in Österreich“ was the responsible Austrian key partner for Bavaria when drafting the Interpretation Framework. The association is committed to collaboration with national and international museums with Roman collections and takes part in the meetings of the “Arbeitsgemeinschaft römischer Museen am Limes in Deutschland” to improve exchange and cooperation. Support of the association by national Austrian advisory boards, namely the “Museumsbund Österreich”, the “Museumsmanagement Niederösterreich GesmbH” (Lower Austria) and the “Verbund Oberösterreichischer Museen” (Upper Austria) was agreed on during a joint meeting on December 11, 2012.

¹⁶ www.noemuseen.at

¹⁷ http://www.donau-limes.at/wp-content/uploads/2013/08/Museen-am-Donaulimes_Vereinszweck.pdf

2.6. Implementation

The structure of the DLIF was developed and approved by the joint Austrian-Bavarian Danube Limes Interpretation Group as a part of the preparation of the nomination. The primary authors are Christof Flügel (Landesstelle für die nichtstaatlichen Museen in Bayern, Munich/Germany) and Eva Kuttner (Association „Museen am Donaulimes in Österreich“, Enns/Austria). Nigel Mills (Heritage Consultant, co-author of the Hadrian's Wall Interpretation Framework and editor of the publication „Presenting the Romans“¹⁸ based on a session at the 21st International Limescongress in Newcastle, 2009) provided advice and editorial support.

The following institutions took part in the development: Landesstelle für die nichtstaatlichen Museen in Bayern (Munich/D); association “Museen am Donaulimes in Österreich” (Enns/A); Oberösterreichisches Landesmuseum (Linz/A); Land Niederösterreich, K1 (St. Pölten/A); Stadtarchäologie Wien (Vienna/A). Structure and content of the DLIF were approved by the joint UK-German Management Group (“Hexham Group”) for the already existing FRE-sections of Hadrian's Wall, the Antonine Wall and the Upper-German Raetian Limes at their meeting in Aalen (Germany; April 30, 2015). Structure and content were further approved during the Dutch-German-Austrian Meeting regarding the extension of the transnational, serial World Heritage Site “Frontiers of the Roman Empire” (Germany / UK) with the “Lower German Limes” (LGL) and the “Danube Limes in Austria and Bavaria” (DLAB) sections in Munich (May 19, 2015). The DLIF was also internationally acknowledged during the session “Presenting the Roman Frontier” at the 23rd International Limescongress in Ingolstadt on September 16, 2015.

2.6.1. Danube Limes Interpretation Framework Group

International co-operation is essential for successful implementation of the DLIF.

The Interpretation Group will therefore not be dissolved following inscription in the World Heritage List but will continue to work as an exchange platform guaranteeing a stable and consistent common approach regarding good practice in interpretation. The Interpretation Group has established a strong structure and functionality as a result of the nomination process and will continue to operate through regular meetings and other activity.

The most important tasks will be to co-ordinate implementation of the proposed actions of the DLIF and to monitor their effectiveness in delivering the DLIF aims. The DLIF-Group will serve as an advisory body for various cultural institutions to promote best practice in interpretation in Austria and Bavaria.

Regular meetings will ensure regional and international exchange in the field of interpretation and museology. Transnational actions will be undertaken in order to establish best-practice-models. Questions of international relevance and quality control concerning interpretation will be discussed in the Frontiers-of-the-Roman-Empire Management Group (“Hexham Group”) and in the Working Group “Römische Museen am Limes” uniting Roman museums along the whole stretch of the Upper German – Raetian Limes.

2.6.2. Local Responsibilities

Implementation of the DLIF on a local level will accord with regional and national cultural legislation. Federal states, townships, communities should strive to implement the DLIF policies and proposals for museums and monuments under their responsibility and seek to secure local financing for relevant projects.

¹⁸ N. Mills (Ed.), Presenting the Romans. Interpreting the Frontiers of the Roman Empire World Heritage Site (Woodbridge 2013).

2.6.3. Collaboration between Museums and Tourism

Tourism management-actions affecting the Danube Limes in Austria and Bavaria must strictly comply with guidelines of the ICOMOS International Cultural Tourism Committee¹⁹.

Activities in connection with displays and attractions should take into consideration the International Cultural Tourism Charter: Managing Tourism at places of heritage (ICOMOS 1999) as well as internationally acknowledged museums standards, as defined in the ICOM statutes. The Rio+20 United Nations Conference on sustainable development “The Future we want” can serve as an outline to tourism actions (article 130, 131). The article of Graham Brooks addresses the duties of tourism management as a contribution to World Heritage Objectives (World Heritage 58, 2010, 82-83).

Possible risks to the property from tourism²⁰ must be continuously monitored: Museums on the Austrian-Bavarian Danube Limes should especially strive to monitor and advise, from the perspectives of archaeology and of interpretation, development programs in their areas which focus or impact on conservation, interpretation and tourism: “conservation, interpretation and tourism development programs ... based on an inadequate understanding of the complex and often conflicting aspects of a place ... can lead to a loss of authenticity and appreciation of the place” (Brooks 2010, 82).

2.6.4. Platform “Donaulimes-Route”

Regular meetings (Platform “Donaulimes-Route”, approved by the Austrian Ministry of Science, Research and Economics) between the association “Museen am Donaulimes in Österreich” and tourism organization „ARGE Donau Österreich“ should foster exchange between museums and tourism to enhance mutual understanding.

The “ARGE Donau Österreich” is a working platform of five tourism organisations of Upper Austria, Lower Austria and Vienna with the purpose of coordinating the marketing of the Austrian Danube section as a tourism destination. This organization promotes a range of Roman themed cycle, hiking and car routes²¹. In general, collaboration between museums’ organizations and tourism boards should aim to ensure that information provided to visitors is archaeologically and historically substantiated, accords with good interpretation practice and respects the international values of the nominated property. Special attention should be paid to input from museum archaeologists and from experienced interpreters to ensure scientific quality control of publicly presented content that is accessible, informative and engaging for visitors.

¹⁹ Graham Brooks, Tourism Management at World Heritage Sites – Building International Consensus. World Heritage 58, 2010, 82-83; ICOMOS (Ed.), International Cultural Tourism Charter: Managing tourism at places of heritage significance (1999).

²⁰ Graham Brooks, Heritage at Risk from Tourism. Heritage at Risk 2001/2002, 242-243; <http://www.icomos.de/heritage-at-risk.php> (01.10.2015). Cf. M.-Th. Albert/B. Ringbeck, 40 Jahre Welterbekonvention. Zur Popularisierung eines Schutzkonzeptes für Kultur- und Naturgüter. Heritage Studies 2 (New York 2015) 143-159.

²¹ <http://www.donau-oesterreich.at/kultur/roemer/> (15.11.2015)

3. Actions

All proposed actions will be evaluated every five years (starting from the publication of this document) by the DLIF Group.

3.1. Transnational and trans-regional development and actions

The proposed actions aim to guarantee sustainable development and to create agreement between education authorities, communities, museums, historical associations and other stakeholders. Trans-regional and trans-national projects will help to promote communication and exchange, as well as optimizing the effort of awareness-building.

3.1.1. Web sites

To enhance global accessibility websites relating to the DLAB will be established or updated.

The content will include

- a) archaeological and historical information
- b) WHS information and management strategies
- c) substantiated visitor information and interpretation

A download interface including open-source-documents, maps, photos, films and digital media is essential. The text will be bilingual (English – German).

3.1.2. Special exhibitions

To enhance knowledge of the DLAB and its associated main theme “Frontline of the Roman Empire”, special exhibitions to be shown in a variety of locations in addition to the supra-regional museums should be developed and promoted. Individual sites can contribute distinctive local elements to common storylines delivered collectively.

The following themes are suggested:

- a) New Troops for the Empire: The Italic “Sister Legions” (*legio II* and *III Italica*) in Enns/Austria and Regensburg/Germany. This story line can be completed through the history of the third sister legion, the *legio I Italica*, based at Svishtov-Novae (Bulgaria).
- b) Plague, Hate and Fear: The Marcomannic Wars
- c) The Retreat of Rome: Saint Severin in Eastern Raetia and Noricum.
- d) Changing Concepts in the Frontier Defence: Late Antique Military Architecture
- e) Romans in Upper Austria; Landesausstellung in Upper Austria 2018.
- f) Roman Military in Pannonia; special exhibition in Carnuntum 2017.

3.1.3. School projects

Regional and transnational school projects should be supported wherever possible.

Educational material provided by museums and used in schools will follow changing curricula and meet the special requirements of various school types. The narrative of the Roman frontier provides opportunities for learning across the curriculum, not just in the context of history or the Romans. The understanding of different cultures, the meaning of borders and social and economic development in ancient times can lead to a better understanding of today’s challenges.

The following educational activities are particularly recommended to be developed and provided by museums and linked institutions:

- a) material for interactive learning in classes, e.g. the so called “Römerkoffer”
- b) educational material for school visits to sites and museums
- c) modules for excursions to sites and museums on elaborated topics

Regional communication structures between schools and museums will be set up. The idea of World Heritage and the aims of UNESCO will be taught with the help of the “World Heritage in Young Hands” and other interpretative materials provided by UNESCO²². Cooperation is sought with ASP-Network-Schools.

3.1.4. Guided Tours – Training and Structures

Guides in museums and local communities will receive a sound introduction from appropriately trained and experienced staff. This introduction will include understanding of the FRE WHS as a whole, lead themes, stories and evidence relating to the relevant interpretation region, local key themes and UNESCO values and objectives. The training of these guides by appropriately trained and experienced professionals should follow a standardized training structure. Guidance on development of appropriate training structures will be developed on a national, regional and local level.

3.1.5. Signage system and multimedia

Development of a transnational signage system for the DLAB: Experience on the Upper-German-Raetian Limes (ORL)²³ showed that a common CI contributes significantly to the visitor’s experience and perception of the Limes as a coherent WHS. Multimedia-Design should follow the common corporate design. Signage and Multimedia-Design used on the Antonine Wall may serve as a best-practice-example.

3.1.6. Local and regional Community Engagement

The DLIF aims to deliver benefits to society, particularly in the environmental, cultural and economic fields. Communication platforms, especially on a regional level, will be supported. Special actions like the international World-Heritage-Day, the international museums’ day, the nationally organized “Tag des Denkmals” (Austria) and “Tag des offenen Denkmals” (Germany) as initiatives of the European Heritage Days or the locally organized “Lange Nacht der Museen” (Long Night of Museums) are unique opportunities to promote local engagement with World Heritage on a local to regional level.

²² <http://www.unesco.org/new/en/education/networks/global-networks/aspnet/> (15.11.2015)

²³ Cf. http://www.deutsche-limeskommission.de/fileadmin/dlk/images/dlk/pdfs/Richtlinien_fuer_Erklaerungstafeln_am_LIMES.pdf (15.11.2015)

3.2. Development and actions for nominated properties and museums (from West to East)

Each site is attributed to one of the previously defined levels of interpretation (D 2.3.2). Site specific key topics are followed by proposals for iconic finds, where feasible. These iconic finds refer to the individual key topic and are outstanding artefacts to illustrate the key messages. Indication of estimated timeframe for realization of proposed actions serves as a benchmarking factor for future periodical reporting.

DLIF 1 Neustadt a. d. Donau-Bad Gögging, Lkr. Kelheim (Lower Bavaria): Römisches Museum für Kur- und Badewesen

Interpretation region: 1.

Interpretation level: 4.

Lead Theme: Military spa of the Regensburg legion.

Actions / Priorities / Timeframe: Re-launch of presentation necessary, 5 years.

DLIF 2 Neustadt a.d. Donau-Eining, Lkr. Kelheim (Lower Bavaria): Watchtower and Sanctuary on the Weinberg

Interpretation region: 1.

Interpretation level: 5.

Lead Theme: Military cultural landscape.

Iconic Find: Statues of Mars and Victoria from the Weinberg sanctuary.

Actions / Priorities / Timeframe: Signage; 3 years

DLIF 3 Regensburg (Upper Palatinate): Historisches Museum (Roman department)

Interpretation region: 1.

Interpretation level: 2; interpretation access point for region 1.

Lead Theme: Home of the Stork legion (*legio III Italica*).

Iconic find: Building Inscription of legionary fortress Regensburg (AD 179).

Actions / Priorities / Timeframe: Re-launch of presentation including multimedia necessary, 10 years.

DLIF 4 Regensburg-Großprüfening (Upper Palatinate): Fortlet, settlement

Interpretation region: 1.

Interpretation level: 5.

Lead Theme: The Beginnings of Roman Regensburg.

Iconic Find: Bronze Statue of Minerva.

Actions / Priorities / Timeframe: Signage; 3 years.

DLIF 5 Regensburg-Kumpfmühl (Upper Palatinate), Fort

Interpretation region: 1.

Interpretation level: 5.

Lead Theme: The Marcomannic Wars.

Iconic Find: Treasure of Regensburg-Kumpfmühl (AD 166/167).

Actions / Priorities / Timeframe: Signage; 3 years.

DLIF 6 Regensburg (Upper Palatinate): *porta praetoria* and wall of legionary fortress „Unter den Schwibbögen 2“

Interpretation region: 1.

Interpretation level: 4 (*document*) and 5.

Lead Theme: Military architecture at the Edge of Empire.

Actions / Priorities / Timeframe: Adjustment of adjacent area, restoration of stone work, planning of a “document *porta praetoria*”; restoration of this iconic site for the Bavarian Danube Limes currently under planning (financed by the German Government Federal Investment Program for National World Heritage Sites); 5 years.

DLIF 7 Regensburg (Upper Palatinate): Visible sections of the legionary fortress wall (Nordostecke; Erhardigasse; Dachauplatz; Dr.-Martin-Luther-Str.; Petersbastei)

Interpretation region: 1.

Interpretation level: 5.

Lead Theme: Information on relevant position of each section inside the legionary fortress.

Actions / Priorities / Timeframe: Signage and adaption of recently established signage (e.g. Nordostecke and Dachauplatz) to Transnational Danube-Limes Corporate Identity; 5 years.

DLIF 8 Regensburg (Upper Palatinate): document niedermünster

Interpretation region: 1.

Interpretation level: 4 (*document*).

Lead Theme: From Roman Legionary Fortress to the Heart of Medieval Bavaria.

Iconic Find: Altar of Centurio of the *legio II Italica*.

Actions / Priorities / Timeframe: no change of presentation ex 2012 necessary.

DLIF 9 Straubing, Lkr. Straubing-Bogen (Lower Bavaria): Gäubodenmuseum (Roman department)

Interpretation region: 2.

Interpretation level: 2.

Lead Theme: Paradigmatic presentation of a military base on the Danube Limes.

Iconic Finds: Oriental Mask from the Straubing Hoard of “Parade Armour”.

Actions / Priorities / Timeframe: Roman presentation was inaugurated in 2012; smaller adaptations necessary; 3 years.

DLIF 10 Straubing, Lkr. Straubing-Bogen (Lower Bavaria): Eastern fort, civil settlement and late Roman burgus

Interpretation region: 2.

Interpretation level: 5. interpretation access point for region 2.

Lead Theme: Experiencing a Roman Fort: Visualization of the Eastern fort and part of the civil settlement.

Iconic Find: “Parade Armour”-Mask type Resca.

Actions / Priorities / Timeframe: Signage; 3 years.

DLIF 11 Straubing, Lkr. Straubing-Bogen (Lower Bavaria): Late Roman fortlet under basilica St. Peter

Interpretation region: 2.

Interpretation level: 5.

Lead Theme: The Last Retreat: Romans and Germanic Warriors.

Iconic Find: Late Antique belt buckle from site Azlburg 2 / grave 1.

Actions / Priorities / Timeframe: Signage; 3 years.

DLIF 12 Künzing, Lkr. Deggendorf (Lower Bavaria): Museum Quintana

Interpretation region: 2.

Interpretation level: 2.

Lead Theme: Small-Scale Rome: Life at the Frontier

Iconic Find: Central piece of chamfron with Mars.

Actions / Priorities / Timeframe: Museum was inaugurated in 2001; no major adaptations necessary.

DLIF 13 Künzing, Lkr. Deggendorf (Lower Bavaria): Amphitheatre

Interpretation region: 2.

Interpretation level: 5.

Lead Theme: Amphitheaters on the Frontiers of the Roman Empire.

Actions / Priorities / Timeframe: Signage; 3 years.

DLIF 14 Passau (Lower Bavaria): Römer Museum Kastell Boiotro

Interpretation region: 3.

Interpretation Category: 1 and 4 (*monumentum*); interpretation access point for region 3.

Lead Theme: Frontier between the provinces *Noricum* and *Raetia*.

Iconic Find: Inscription of customs officer Faustianus.

Actions / Priorities / Timeframe: Museum was completely re-launched in 2014; no adaptations necessary.

DLIF 15 Passau-Niedernburg (Lower Bavaria): Middle-imperial fort and Late Antique fortified settlement

Interpretation region: 3.

Interpretation Category: 5.

Lead Theme: Romans under the nuns' convent.

Iconic Find: Small Bronze statue of Victoria on globe.

Actions / Priorities / Timeframe: Signage, 3 years.

DLIF 16 Passau-Haibach (Lower Bavaria): Late Roman Burgus

Interpretation region: 3.

Interpretation level: 5.

Lead Theme: Re-organization of the Danube Limes Frontier Defense in Late Antiquity.

Actions / Priorities / Timeframe: Signage; 3 years.

DLIF 17 Oberranna, municipality Engelhartszell (Upper Austria): Fortlet

Interpretation region: 3.

Interpretation level: 4 (*monumentum*) and 5.

Lead Theme: Roman Fortlet and later wine cellar.

Actions / Priorities / Timeframe: Larger adaptations of presentation (Landesausstellung 2018 "Romans in Upper Austria") / 3 years.

DLIF 18 Schlögen, municipalities St. Agatha and Haibach (Upper Austria): Fort and Vicus

Interpretation region: 3.

Interpretation level: 4 (*monumentum*) and 5.

Lead Theme: Strategic location of a Roman fort at Danube winding.

Iconic Find: Aureus of Diocletianus.

Actions / Priorities / Timeframe: Presentation of baths (Landesausstellung 2018 "Romans in Upper Austria").

DLIF 19 Hirscheitengraben, municipality Wilhering (Upper Austria):

Watchtower

Interpretation region: 3.

Interpretation Category: 5.

Lead Theme: A communication line to the fort *Lentia*/Linz.

Actions / Priorities / Timeframe: Signage; 3 years.

DLIF 20 Linz (Upper Austria): Oberösterreichisches Landesmuseum

(Roman department)

Interpretation region: 3.

Interpretation level: 1.

Lead Theme: Roman culture in Upper Austria.

Iconic Finds: Altar of Tiberius Claudius Provincialis from Ansfelden.

Actions / Priorities / Timeframe: Adaptions of exhibition (Landesausstellung 2018 “Romans in Upper Austria”).

DLIF 21 Linz-Martinsfeld and Linz-Schlossberg (Upper Austria):

Fortification and civil settlement LENTIA

Interpretation region: 3.

Interpretation level: 5.

Lead Theme: The change of settlement on a small scale.

Iconic Find: Relief of a Roman soldier.

Actions / Priorities / Timeframe: Signage; 3 years.

DLIF 22 Enns (Upper Austria): Museum Lauriacum

Interpretation region: 4

Interpretation level: 1; interpretation access point for region 4.

Lead Theme: The legion’s influence on economy and culture.

Iconic Find: Statue of the Genius of the *legio II Italica*, coin of Constantius II, brick of the *legio II Italica*, crossbow fibula.

Actions / Priorities / Timeframe: new exhibition (Landesausstellung 2018 “Romans in Upper Austria”) / 3 years; establishment of a Limes Information Centre for Noricum / 5 years.

DLIF 23 Enns (Upper Austria): Legionary fortress, civil settlement, cemetery LAURIACUM

Interpretation region: 4.

Interpretation level: 5.

Lead Theme: Home of the *legio II Italica* (information on relevant position of each section inside the Roman fortress and surroundings).

Iconic find: Building inscription of the fortress.

Actions / Priorities / Timeframe: Signage; 3 years.

DLIF 24 Enns (Upper Austria): Lime Kilns of the Second Italic Legion

Interpretation Region: 4.

Interpretation level: 4 (*monumentum*) and 5.

Lead Theme: Building material for the Roman Army.

Actions / Priorities / Timeframe: Presentation of lime kilns (Landesausstellung 2018 “Romans in Upper Austria”) / 3 years.

DLIF 25 Lorch, municipality Enns (Upper Austria):**St. Laurenz – Early Christian church**

Interpretation region: 4.

Interpretation level: 4 (*monumentum*).

Lead Theme: Early Christianity on the Danube Limes in Noricum.

Actions / Priorities / Timeframe: multimedia presentation / Adaption of exhibition (Landesausstellung 2018 “Romans in Upper Austria”) / 3 years.

DLIF 26 Albing, municipality St. Pantaleon-Erla (Lower Austria): Legionary fortress

Interpretation region: 4.

Interpretation level: 5.

Lead Theme: Moving 6000 legionaries: An abandoned fortress of the *legio II Italica*.

Actions / Priorities / Timeframe: Signage / 3 years.

DLIF 27 Wallsee, municipality Wallsee-Sindelburg (Lower Austria):**Römermuseum Wallsee**

Interpretation region: 5.

Interpretation level: 3.

Lead Theme: Food for the Roman army.

Iconic find: Relief block with Roman butcher.

Actions / Priorities / Timeframe: new adaption; 5 years.

DLIF 28 Wallsee, municipality Wallsee-Sindelburg (Lower Austria): Fort

Interpretation region: 5.

Interpretation level: 5.

Lead Theme: Outlook on the hill.

Actions / Priorities / Timeframe: Signage; 3 years.

DLIF 29 Wallsee, municipality Wallsee-Sindelburg (Lower Austria):**Late Antique Fortlet**

Interpretation region: 5.

Interpretation level: 4 (*monumentum*).

Lead Theme: The ultimate defence - last building actions on the frontier.

Iconic Finds: Roman grave monuments, re-used in Late Antique fortlet.

Actions / Priorities / Timeframe: multimedia presentation; 5 years.

DLIF 30 Ybbs an der Donau (Lower Austria): Late Antique fortlet

Interpretation region: 5.

Interpretation level: 5.

Lead Theme: Burgus: A Late Antique fortification at its best.

Actions / Priorities / Timeframe: Signage; 3 years; *monumentum* with new presentation 5 years.

DLIF 31 Pöchlarn (Lower Austria): Stadtmuseum**Arelape-Bechelaren-Pöchlarn**

Interpretation region: 5.

Interpretation level: 3.

Lead Theme: A Shipping Lane for Trade.

Iconic find: Statue of Amor.

Actions / Priorities / Timeframe: adaption of the exhibition; 3 years.

DLIF 32 Pöchlarn (Lower Austria): Fort and Vicus ARELAPE

Interpretation region: 5

Interpretation level: 5.

Lead Theme: Fleets and floods.

Iconic find: Owner mark.

Actions / Priorities / Timeframe: Signage; 3 years.

**DLIF 33 Blashausgraben, municipality Schönbühel Aggsbach
(Lower Austria): Watchtower**

Interpretation region: 5.

Interpretation level: 5.

Lead Theme: Location of watchtowers and their function as signal stations.

Actions / Priorities / Timeframe: Signage; 3 years.

**DLIF 34 Bacharnsdorf, municipality Rossatz-Arnsdorf (Lower Austria):
Late Antique Watchtower**

Interpretation region: 5.

Interpretation level: 5.

Lead Theme: Burgus – upgrade of fortification and military frontier control.

Actions / Priorities / Timeframe: Signage; 3 years.

**DLIF 35 St. Lorenz, municipality Rossatz-Arnsdorf (Lower Austria):
Late Antique Watchtower**

Interpretation region: 5.

Interpretation level: 5.

Lead Theme: Crossing the river: An open frontier?

Actions / Priorities / Timeframe: Signage; 3 years.

**DLIF 36 Windstallgraben, municipality Rossatz-Arnsdorf (Lower Austria):
Late Antique Watchtower**

Interpretation region: 5.

Interpretation level: 5.

Lead Theme: The Danube valley with an impassable riverside.

Actions / Priorities / Timeframe: Signage; 3 years.

DLIF 37 Mautern an der Donau (Lower Austria): Römermuseum Mautern

Interpretation region: 5.

Interpretation level: 2. Interpretation access point for region 5.

Lead Theme: Protection of a strategic point: 500 years of importance.

Iconic Find: Military diploma, glazed figural jug, enamelled fibula.

Actions / Priorities / Timeframe: Adaption of the exhibition; 5 years.

DLIF 38 Mautern an der Donau (Lower Austria): Fort FAVIANIS

Interpretation region: 5.

Interpretation level: 4 (*monumentum*).

Lead Theme: Deterrence and defence.

Iconic find: Brick of *legio I Noricorum*.

Actions / Priorities / Timeframe: Signage; 3 years.

DLIF 39 Traismauer (Lower Austria): Stadtmuseum**Traismauer “Hungerturm”**

Interpretation region: 6.

Interpretation level: 3 and 4 (*monumentum*).

Lead Theme: Afterlife of a Roman fort through centuries.

Iconic Find: Head of a fourth-century Emperor.

Actions / Priorities / Timeframe: new exhibition; 5 years.

DLIF 40 Traismauer (Lower Austria): Fort AUGUSTIANIS

Interpretation region: 6.

Interpretation level: 5.

Lead Theme: Soldiers on the move: Streets and rivers.

Iconic Find: Milestones.

Actions / Priorities / Timeframe: Signage; 3 years.

DLIF 41 Traismauer (Lower Austria): *principia* under Church St. Rupert

Interpretation region: 6.

Interpretation level: 4 (*monumentum*).

Lead Theme: The heart of the Roman and modern settlement.

Actions / Priorities / Timeframe: media presentation; 5 years.

DLIF 42 Zwentendorf (Lower Austria): Museum Zwentendorf (Roman department)

Interpretation region: 6.

Interpretation level: 3.

Lead Theme: Making the monument visible: From old maps to modern prospections.

Iconic find: Horse head swastika fibula.

Actions / Priorities / Timeframe: additions / 3 years.

DLIF 43 Zwentendorf (Lower Austria): Fort, civil settlement, vicus and cemetery ASTURIS

Interpretation region: 6.

Interpretation level: 5.

Lead Theme: Making the invisible visible.

Actions / Priorities / Timeframe: Signage; 3 years.

DLIF 44 Tulln an der Donau (Lower Austria): Römermuseum Tulln

Interpretation region: 6.

Interpretation level: 2 (regional museum).

Lead Theme: Rome`s cavalry: Life and work of the soldiers.

Iconic find: Silver Treasure.

Actions / Priorities / Timeframe: Concept and adaptations/5 years.

DLIF 45 Tulln an der Donau (Lower Austria): Late Antique tower “Salzturm”

Interpretation region: 6.

Interpretation level: 4 (*monumentum*).

Lead Theme: The “Salzturm”: Reuse of a Roman tower.

Actions / Priorities / Timeframe: Signage, multimedia presentation; 5 years.

DLIF 46 Tulln an der Donau (Lower Austria): Eastern gate and Central Area of Fort COMMAGENIS

Interpretation region: 6.

Interpretation level: 4 (*monumentum*) - Eastern Gate.

Lead Theme: From mudbricks to cement stone walls: Military building techniques.

Iconic Find: Building inscription (104 AD).

Actions / Priorities / Timeframe: Signage; 3 years.

DLIF 47 Zeiselmauer, municipality Zeiselmauer-Windpassing (Lower Austria): Fort CANNABIACA

Interpretation region: 6.

Interpretation level: 5.

Lead Theme: Late Antique military architecture: Different types of fortification.

Iconic Find: Late Antique glass vessel.

Actions / Priorities / Timeframe: Signage; 3 years.

DLIF 48 Zeiselmauer, municipality Zeiselmauer-Windpassing (Lower Austria): Roman headquarters under church

Interpretation region: 6.

Interpretation level: 4 (*monumentum*).

Lead Theme: The heart of a Roman fortress: The headquarter's shrine.

Iconic Find: Honorary inscription for Lucius Verus.

Actions / Priorities / Timeframe: multimedia presentation; 5 years.

DLIF 49 Klosterneuburg (Lower Austria): Stift Klosterneuburg (Roman department)

Interpretation region: 6.

Interpretation level: 3 and 4 (*monumentum*); interpretation access point for region 6.

Lead Theme: A Demonstration of power – from the Romans to the House of Babenberg, the origin of Austria.

Iconic Find: military diploma.

Actions / Priorities / Timeframe: adaption of the permanent exhibition and presentation of archaeological findings; 5 years.

DLIF 50 Klosterneuburg (Lower Austria): Fort and Vicus

Interpretation region: 6.

Interpretation level: 5.

Lead Theme: Border between the provinces of Noricum and Pannonia Superior.

Actions / Priorities / Timeframe: Signage; 3 years.

DLIF 51 Vienna: Römermuseum – Wien Museum

Interpretation region: 7.

Interpretation level: 1 and 4 (*monumentum*); interpretation access point for region 7.

Lead Theme: Influence of the legion on social life.

Iconic Find: Silver fibula with the river god Danuvius.

Actions / Priorities / Timeframe: Museum was completely re-launched; no major adaptations necessary.

DLIF 52 Petronell-Carnuntum and Bad Deutsch Altenburg (Lower Austria): Legionary fortress, civil settlements, cemetery, Limes road

Interpretation region: 8.

Interpretation level: 5.

Lead Theme: Rome on the Danube (Information on relevant position of each section).

Actions / Priorities / Timeframe: Local management plans Carnuntum, valid until 2030, regulate details of interpretation, conservation, excavation and research for the whole area of Carnuntum.

DLIF 53 Petronell-Carnuntum (Lower Austria):**Amphitheatre and Gladiators' school**

Interpretation region: 8.

Interpretation level: 4 (*monumentum*); archaeological park.

Lead Theme: Battle arena as landmark.

Iconic Find: Altars of Nemesis.

Actions / Priorities / Timeframe: Signage; 3 years.

DLIF 54 Petronell-Carnuntum (Lower Austria): Heidentor

Interpretation region: 8.

Interpretation level: 4 (*monumentum*), archaeological park.

Lead Theme: A Demonstration of imperial power.

Actions / Priorities / Timeframe: no adaptations necessary.

DLIF 55 Petronell-Carnuntum (Lower Austria): *Macellum*

Interpretation region: 8.

Interpretation level: 4 (*monumentum*); archaeological park.

Lead Theme: The marketplace in the heart of the civilian town.

Iconic Find: Altar of Faustianus.

Actions / Priorities / Timeframe: Restoration of excavated remains; 5 years.

DLIF 56 Petronell-Carnuntum (Lower Austria):**Freilichtmuseum Petronell**

Interpretation region: 8.

Interpretation level: 1; archaeological park; interpretation access point for region 8.

Lead Theme: Reborn City of Emperors.

Iconic Find: Altar of four Roman emperors; Relief of Mithras.

Actions / Priorities / Timeframe: establishment of a Limes Information Centre for Pannonia Superior.

DLIF 57 Petronell-Carnuntum: Auxiliary fort

Interpretation region: 8.

Interpretation level: 5.

Lead Theme: Cavalry controlling the border.

Iconic Find: Parade mask.

Actions / Priorities / Timeframe: Signage; 3 years.

DLIF 58 Petronell-Carnuntum: Museum Petronell-Carnuntum**Auxiliarkastell**

Interpretation region: 8.

Interpretation level: 3 and 4 (*monumentum*).

Lead Theme: Water for the army.

Actions / Priorities / Timeframe: smaller adaptations necessary, 5 years.

DLIF 59 Bad Deutsch Altenburg: Amphitheatre Bad Deutsch Altenburg

Interpretation region: 8.

Interpretation level: 3 and 4 (*monumentum*); archaeological park.

Lead Theme: Death in the Afternoon: Gladiators' games at the edge of Empire.

Iconic Find: Statue of Nemesis.

Actions / Priorities / Timeframe: Restoration of excavated remains; 5 years.

DLIF 60 Bad Deutsch Altenburg: Museum Carnuntinum

Interpretation region: 8.

Interpretation level: 1.

Lead Theme: The Roman Army and Oriental Gods.

Iconic Finds: Jupiter Dolichenus statue; marble statue of dancing maenad; bronze head of Athena Parthenos.

Actions / Priorities / Timeframe: Relaunch of exhibition every 5 years.

3.3. Development and actions for museums in the Hinterland

The Archaeological State collection Munich (ASM) is the Central Bavarian Museum for archaeology. The Roman department therefore focuses on “Bavaria in Roman Times”, including the Upper-German-Raetian as well as the Bavarian Danube Limes.

The Archaeological museum at Kelheim (Bavaria) is the central information point for prehistoric to early Medieval archaeology in the region. Its Roman focus lies on the presentation of the Roman fort of Abusina-Eining, as the last fort of the Raetian limes protecting the junction of the Raetian and the Danube Limes.

The Roman administration centres of the Province of Noricum, Wels (Roman OVILAVA) and St. Pölten (Roman AELIUM CETIUM), are situated at a distance of about 25 kilometers from the Danube Limes. Historically and archaeologically they are closely connected with the development of the Danube Limes and the province.

Both museums offer well-established exhibitions focused on aspects of civil life in Roman times in the hinterland of the Danube Limes with special guidance for schools and young people.

DLIF 61 München/Munich (Bavaria), Archäologische Staatssammlung (ASM)

Interpretation Region: Limes sections in Bavaria.

Interpretation Category: 1.

Lead Theme: Raetia: A Roman Frontier Province.

Iconic Find: Small bronze statue of a Roman Genius from Künzing, dedicated by the *collegium veteranorum*.

Actions / Priorities / Timeframe: ASM will be completely restructured in the next years. The relaunch of the permanent Roman exhibition is scheduled for 2020.

DLIF 62 Kelheim (Bavaria), Archäologisches Museum

Interpretation Region: Raetian Limes.

Interpretation Category: 2.

Lead Theme: Junction of the Raetian and the Danube Limes.

Actions / Priorities / Timeframe: Key Topic to be developed in the museum’s display; 5 years.

DLIF 63 Wels (Upper Austria), Stadtmuseum Wels Minoriten OVILAVA

Interpretation region: 4.

Interpretation Category: 2.

Lead Theme: Civil life in OVILAVA.

Iconic Find: Leg of equestrian bronze statue of an Emperor.

Actions / Priorities / Timeframe: no more adaptations necessary.

DLIF 64 St. Pölten (Lower Austria), Stadtmuseum St. Pölten

Interpretation region: 6.

Interpretation Category: 2.

Lead Theme: Infrastructure and administration.

Iconic Find: Late Antique glass bowl with incised figures.

Actions / Priorities / Timeframe: adaption with key topic / 3 years.

Part D – Action Plan 2019-2025

for the nominated component parts of The Danube Limes in Bavaria

Each of the nominated sites in Bavaria may have different management or protection measurement needs. The Bavarian State Conservation Office, the local authorities and the property owners are responsible for their implementation. The following summary action plan statements indicate individual management measures and actions site by site.

ID No	Component part	Advised Measures / Actions	Time-frame	Resources
1	Bad Gögging – Heilbad	<i>Monitoring:</i> Annual visual inspection	permanent	BLfD / Kelheim County
		<i>Research:</i> Scientific processing and publication of the results of the archaeological excavations carried out at Bad Gögging in the course of a PhD dissertation based at Munich University	2019-2025	
		<i>Education/Interpretation:</i> - Re-launch of the presentation of the Roman Spa Museum Bad Gögging based on the results of the above mentioned research	2023-2025	City of Neustadt a.d Donau
		- Content-development of a Bad Gögging module for the Advanced Limes Applications (ALApp)	2023-2025	City / BLfD
2	Eining-Weinberg – Wachturm und Heiligtum	<i>Monitoring:</i> Annual visual inspection	permanent	BLfD / Kelheim County
		<i>Education/Interpretation:</i> - Implementation of the Eining-Weinberg module of the Advanced Limes Applications (ALApp)	2019	EU Project
		- Installation of an analogue trigger element for the Advanced Limes Applications (ALApp) module Eining-Weinberg	2020-2021	City / BLfD
		- Installation of signposts in the course of the realignment of the Danube Cycle Path between Eining and Staubing	2020-2025	City of Neustadt a.d. Donau
		<i>Link to the Danube:</i> The preservation of the dry grassland in the course of the nature protection scheme sustainably guarantees the direct views towards the Danube river as well as to the Roman land frontier (ORL) approaching from north west	permanent	City
3	Weltenburg-Am Galget – Kleinkastell	<i>Monitoring:</i> - Removal of the earth, gravel and wood deposited on site - Annual visual inspection	2019-2020 permanent	Landowner BLfD / Kelheim County
		<i>Conservation:</i> Transfer of areas of the component part from private into public ownership and transformation of farmed areas into greenland if such possibilities arise	midterm	City of Kelheim
		<i>Education/Interpretation:</i> - Installation of information panels	2019-2021	City
		- Content-development of a Weltenburg-Am Galget module for the Advanced Limes Applications (ALApp)	2019-2021	County
		<i>Link to the Danube:</i> The existing views from the terrace with the Early Roman fortlet towards the Danube valley will be preserved and – in accordance with nature protection – kept free from newly growing bushes and trees that could obstruct them.	permanent	City

ID No	Component part	Advised Measures / Actions	Time-frame	Resources	
4	Regensburg Großprüfening – Kastell und Vicus	<i>Monitoring:</i> Annual visual inspection	permanent	BLfD / City of Regensburg City	
		<i>Conservation:</i> Transfer of areas of the component part from private into public ownership and transformation of farmed areas into greenland if such possibilities arise	permanent		
		<i>Education/Interpretation:</i>			
		- Installation of information panels	2019-2021	City	
		- Installation of an on-site Archaeoskop that shows a reconstructed 3D view of the Roman site	2019-2021	City / BLfD	
		- Content-development of a Regensburg Großprüfening module for the Advanced Limes Applications (ALApp)	2019-2021	City/BLfD	
		<i>Link to the Danube:</i> Removal of trees and bushes west of the protective building with Roman remains in display to provide views across the Roman fort and vicus towards the Danube river and its confluence with the Naab river	2019-2022	City	
5a-b	Regensburg Kumpfmühl – Kastell und Vicus	<i>Monitoring:</i> Annual visual inspection	permanent	BLfD / City of Regensburg	
		<i>Research:</i> Scientific processing and publication of the results of recent archaeological excavations in the Vicus in the course of a PhD dissertation based at Bamberg University	2019-2025		
		<i>Education/Interpretation:</i>			
		- Renewal of existing information panels	2019-2021	City	
		- Installation of an on-site Archaeoskop that shows a reconstructed 3D view of the Roman site	2019-2021	City / BLfD	
		- Conversion of the City of Regensburg Roman App content into a Regensburg Kumpfmühl module for the Advanced Limes Applications (ALApp)	2019-2021	City	
		<i>Link to the Danube:</i> Visualisation of the topographic situation of Regensburg Kumpfmühl in respect to the Danube and the joining rivers Naab and Regen by means of the augmented reality module of the Advanced Limes Applications (ALApp)	2019-2025	City / BLfD	
6a-l	Regensburg – Legionslager, Canabae, Gräberfeld	<i>Monitoring:</i> Annual visual inspection	permanent	BLfD / City of Regensburg	
		<i>Research:</i>			
		- Scientific processing and publication of the results of archaeological excavations carried out in the area of the canabae legionis in the course of a PhD dissertation based at Munich University	2019-2022		
		- Interdisciplinary research project on the recently excavated parts of the Roman, Late Roman, and Early Medieval Regensburg necropolis by the Bavarian State Conservation Office, the University of Munich and the Bavarian State Collection for Anthropology and Palaeoanatomy	2019-2025		
		<i>Education/Interpretation:</i>			
		- Presentation of a Danube Limes Roll Up Banner exhibition in the World Heritage Interpretation Center	2019	BLfD / City	
		- Re-launch of the presentation in the World Heritage Information Center with reference to the Danube Limes	2019-2025	City	
- Additions to the presentation of the Roman department of the Historical Museum Regensburg	2019-2025	City			
		- Installation of on-site Archaeoskops that show reconstructed 3D views of the southeast corner of the legionary fortress, of the bathhouse in the east of the civil settlement, and of the large cemetery of the legionary base	2019-2021	City / BLfD	

ID No	Component part	Advised Measures / Actions	Time-frame	Resources
		- Conversion of the City of Regensburg Roman App content into a Regensburg Legionslager module for the Advanced Limes Applications (ALApp)	2019-2021	City / BLfD
		<i>Link to the Danube:</i> Installation of panels with information on the eastern part of the civil settlement of the legionary fortress at the northern balustrade of the park of the Royal Villa with a broad view to the nearby Danube river	2019-2025	City / BLfD
7a	Straubing – Ostkastell	<i>Monitoring:</i> Annual visual inspection	permanent	BLfD / City of Straubing
		<i>Conservation:</i> Transfer of areas of the component part from private into public ownership and transformation of farmed areas into greenland if such possibilities arise	permanent	City
		<i>Research:</i> - Publication of the results of the archaeological excavations and geophysical surveys carried out at the area of the Ostkastell III in Straubing processed in the course of a PhD dissertation based at Freiburg University	2019-2020	
		- Publication of a MA thesis on a building in the Vicus of the Ostkastell handed in at Munich University	2019-2021	
		- Scientific processing and publication of a Hunting Beaker production excavated at Straubing in the course of a PhD dissertation based at Munich University	2019-2025	
		<i>Education/Interpretation:</i> - Renewal of the site information panels at Straubing Ostkastell	2019-2021	City
		- Content-development of a Straubing Ostkastell module for the Advanced Limes Applications (ALApp) using existing virtual reconstructions of Straubing Museum	2019-2021	City / BLfD
		- Publication of an archaeological guide book on Roman Straubing	2019-2020	commercial
7 b	Straubing – Kastell St. Peter	<i>Monitoring:</i> Annual visual inspection	permanent	BLfD / City of Straubing
		<i>Research:</i> Ground Penetrating Radar (GPR) survey in the area around the church and on the graveyard pathways	2019	Ordinary budget of BLfD
		<i>Education/Interpretation:</i> - Renewal of information panels	2019-2021	City
		- Content-development of a Straubing St. Peter module for the Advanced Limes Applications (ALApp)	2019-2021	City / BLfD
		<i>Link to the Danube:</i> Visualisation of the topographic situation of the Danube and the Roman harbor at Allachbach burn by means of the augmented reality module of the Advanced Limes Applications (ALApp) based on the results of the old river beds research project	2021-2025	City / BLfD
8	Künzing – Amphitheater und Vicus	<i>Monitoring:</i> Annual visual inspection	permanent	BLfD / Municipality of Künzing
		<i>Research:</i> - Scientific publication of the results of the archaeological excavations carried out at the site of the amphitheater in the Vicus of Künzing in the course of a MA dissertation based at Cologne University	2019	BLfD / District
		- Scientific processing and publication of the results of the archaeological excavations carried out at the site of the sanctuary of Mithras in the Vicus of Künzing in the course of a MA dissertation based at Munich University	2019-2023	

ID No	Component part	Advised Measures / Actions	Time-frame	Resources
		- Publication of the results of an archaeological excavations carried out in the Vicus processed in the course of a Bachelor's thesis based at Bamberg University	2019-2020	
		<i>Education/Interpretation:</i>		
		- Presentation of a Danube Limes Roll Up Banner exhibition in Museum Quintana	2019	BLfD / Municipality
		- Installation of new site information panels referring to the ALApp-module Künzing Amphitheater and Vicus	2019-2021	Municipality
		- Presentation of finds from the amphitheater in Museum Quintana	2020-2021	Municipality
		- Content-development of a Künzing Amphitheater and Vicus module for the Advanced Limes Applications (ALApp)	2021-2025	Municipality / BLfD
		<i>Link to the Danube:</i> Visualisation of the change of the river course of Danube by means of the augmented reality module of the Advanced Limes Applications (ALApp) based on the results of the old river beds research project	2021-2025	Municipality / BLfD
9a	Passau Altstadt – Kastell	<i>Monitoring:</i> Annual visual inspection	permanent	BLfD / City of Passau
		<i>Education/Interpretation:</i>		
		- Scientific publication of the results of the archaeological excavations carried out at the Niedernburg church	2019	BLfD
		- Installation of information panels	2019-2021	City
		- Content-development of a Passau Altstadt Kastell module for the Advanced Limes Applications (ALApp) using existing virtual reconstructions developed for Passau Roman Museum	2019-2021	City / BLfD
		<i>Link to the Danube:</i> Visualisation of the topographic situation of the three joining rivers Danube, Inn and Ilz by means of the Advanced Limes Applications (ALApp)	2019-2025	City / BLfD
9b	Passau Boiotro – Kastell	<i>Monitoring:</i> Annual visual inspection	permanent	BLfD / City of Passau
		<i>Education/Interpretation:</i>		
		- Presentation of a Danube Limes Roll Up Banner exhibition in Passau Roman Museum	2019	BLfD / City
		- Adaptation of existing information panels to Transnational Danube-Limes Corporate Identity	2019-2021	City
		- Content-development of a Passau Boiotro Kastell module for the Advanced Limes Applications (ALApp) using existing virtual reconstructions developed for Passau Roman Museum	2019-2021	City / BLfD
		<i>Link to the Danube:</i> Visualisation of the topographic situation of the three joining rivers Danube, Inn and Ilz by means of the Advanced Limes Applications (ALApp)	2019-2025	City / BLfD
9c	Passau Haibach – Burgus	<i>Monitoring:</i> Annual visual inspection	permanent	BLfD / City of Passau
		<i>Education/Interpretation:</i>		
		- Adaption of existing information panels	2019-2021	City
		- Content-development of a Passau Haibach Burgus module for the Advanced Limes Applications (ALApp) using an existing virtual reconstruction developed for Passau Roman Museum	2019-2021	City / BLfD
		<i>Link to the Danube:</i> Visualisation of the topographic situation of the three joining rivers Danube, Inn and Ilz by means of the Advanced Limes Applications (ALApp)	2019-2025	City / BLfD

3.c. National Management Plan Slovakia

Authors: Ľubica Pinčíková, Magdaléna Janovská, Anna Tuhárska

Project supervisor: Katarína Kosová

Cooperation: members of the Management Group “Limes Romanus – Ancient Roman Monuments on the Middle Danube”

English Translation: Agentúra VKM, s.r.o.

Pamiatkový úrad Slovenskej republiky

Cesta na Červený most 6

814 06 Bratislava

Slovak Republic

www.pamiatky.sk

Bratislava 2017

(2021 general text slightly adjusted after Hungary's withdrawal)

Table of contents

1. Introduction	134
<hr/>	
2. Definition of subject matter	135
2.a. Wider context	135
2.b. Description of nominated component parts situated in Slovakia	137
2.c. Values of the property	142
<hr/>	
3. Current State of Preservation and Potential risk factors affecting the nominated component parts	146
3.a. Bratislava-Rusovce – Gerulata, rímsky vojenský tábor (kastel)	146
3.b. Iža – “Kelemantia”, rímsky vojenský tábor (kastel)	147
<hr/>	
4. Management of the Danube Limes	149
4.a. International Framework	149
4.b. Management system of the Danube Limes in Slovakia	150
4.c. Update of the Action Plan for the Danube Limes in Slovakia	152
<hr/>	
5. Implementation	176
5.a. Updated Address List of the Management Group „Limes Romanus – Ancient Roman Monuments on the Middle Danube“	177
<hr/>	
6. Annex	179

1. Introduction

The document you receive is an update of the Management Plan 2011 – 2021 which was developed six years ago during the early stage of the nomination process for inscription of the Danube Limes in the World Heritage List. Since then, the Management Plan 2011 – 2021 has been a valid document guiding activities and cooperation of involved stakeholders within the Danube Limes in Slovakia. This update has been inspired on the one hand by the necessity to assess performance of set tasks and to formulate new ones which arose during the past years, and on the other hand by the transformed and significantly extended context of the Danube Limes nomination.

According to the recommendations of the Secretariat of the World Heritage Committee and its advisory body, ICOMOS, encouraging closer international cooperation in future nominations, the Slovak Republic and two other neighbouring countries harmonized projects for inclusion of their Roman Empire frontiers' sections in the World Heritage List and they agreed to prepare a joint cross-border, Austrian-German-Slovak, nomination *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – the Danube Limes (Western Segment)*. The Update of the Management Plan 2017 – 2021 takes into account the newly proposed outstanding universal value of the Danube Limes and the wider international framework of cooperation needed to ensure the site's effective protection and management.

Slovak component parts of the proposed new World Heritage property are same as in 2011: the Roman military fort (kastel) Gerulata in Bratislava - Rusovce and the Roman military fort (kastel) „Kelemantia“ in Iža, and also the delimitation of their core zones remains unchanged. Yet, the scope of buffer zone in Iža has been enlarged therefore the pertaining part of the updated Management Plan deals in more detail with this modification.

Also, the vision and direction of the Update of the Management Plan 2017 – 2021 have not been changed, it represents an essential instrument for efficient protection of the sites, for identification and elimination of threats, and for conduction of their adequate development while understanding needs and legitimate interests of inhabitants living in their surroundings. The Update has been prepared by the Monuments Board of the Slovak Republic in close cooperation with members of the Management Group “Limes Romanus – Ancient Roman Monuments on the Middle Danube” (established in 2011), they provided assessment of tasks fulfilled so far, contributed to redefinition of short-, medium- and long-term activities plan and approved the Update on the Management Group's meeting held on 10 November 2017 in Bratislava.

As well as its predecessor, even the Update of the Management Plan 2017 – 2021 is understood as an open document which can be operatively modified, provided maintaining the aim of the best possible protection of the unique parts of the Roman Empire's border on the territory of Slovakia and their preservation for future generations.

Ľubica Pinčíková

2. Definition of subject matter

2.a. Wider context¹

2.a.1. FRONTIERS OF THE ROMAN EMPIRE²

The Roman Empire has been one of the largest empires of the history which existed through more than a millennium. It extended on three continents round the Mediterranean Sea. Its territory was growing in the late republican era and under Augustus. Under him the conquests extended Rome's authority over European areas across the Alps and to the line of the Danube during battles fought between 15–9 BC. The Roman Empire reached its greatest extension under Trajan, and the territory ruled by Rome remained approximately within the same perimeters as such until the end of the 4th century. After the division of the empire by Theodosius between his two sons it split to a Western and an Eastern Empire, and though the western one ceased to exist in AD 476, the Eastern Empire gained another thousand year of existence until the Turkish occupation of its capital in 1453.

The frontiers of the empire moved several times due to the changes of the territories and provinces occupied. The most significant changes took place in Europe through the incorporation of the territories up to the Rhine and the Danube, and the British Isles far to the North during the 1st century. The creation of the provinces of Raetia, Noricum, Pannonia and Moesia in their final form led to the establishment of the first permanent military forts. Beginning with the third quarter of the 1st century, during the Flavian emperors, the frontiers began to be stabilised along the outer borders of the empire. The consequence of this stabilization was the building of permanent military bases along this line. It is named as linear frontier of the Roman Empire or Limes. This military structure consisted of a military road and of different types of military forts and fortlets. Additionally a chain of civilian settlements were developed near to these bases as well, and also they got a more and more permanent character. This structure of border defence characterised the Roman Empire from the end of the 1st century until the end of its existence.

Since the early 2000s, in connection with the nomination of the Upper German-Raetian Limes for World Heritage, it has been the aim of the States Parties to inscribe the Roman frontier in its entirety on the World Heritage List. Following this in 2008 the Antonine Wall (GB) was inscribed on the World Heritage list as part of the WHS 'Frontiers of the Roman Empire' (Hadrian's Wall (GB), Upper German-Raetian Limes (DE), Antonine Wall (GB)). To continue towards the goal of an encompassing WHS the States Parties of Europe commissioned in 2016/2017 a "Thematic Study and proposed World Heritage Nomination Strategy",³ which was presented to the WHC at 41. COM in Krakow 2017 and adopted by the WH Committee.⁴

This Thematic Study provides an overview of what remains of the frontiers of the Roman Empire, extending over the continents of Africa, Asia and Europe. It summarises the chronological and geographical scope of the frontiers and their functional, chronological, social and cultural links and

¹ This chapter is based on texts used in the nomination dossier *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes (Western Segment)* (2017), which have been shortened for the purposes of the Update of the Management Plan 2017 – 2021 Danube Limes in Slovakia

² In: UNESCO World Heritage List – Brief description of the Frontiers of the Roman Empire WHS, <http://whc.unesco.org/en/list/430>

³ R. Ployer/M. Polak/R. Schmidt, The Frontiers of the Roman Empire. A Thematic Study and proposed World Heritage Nomination Strategy advised by ICOMOS-International and commissioned by the Intergovernmental Committee of the 'Frontiers of the Roman Empire' World Heritage Site (UK, DE) and the Bratislava Group (Vienna/Nijmegen/Munich 2017) (http://www.limeswerelderfgoed.nl/wp-content/uploads/2017/09/FRE-TS_FinalVersion_rapport_1.pdf).

⁴ Decision 41 COM 8B.50, p. 259 <http://whc.unesco.org/archive/2017/whc17-41com-18-en.pdf>

complexity. The outcomes of the internal comparisons of the Roman frontiers served as the basis for the development of a Nomination Strategy aimed at providing the World Heritage Committee with insight into the intended nominations, the justification of the properties, the selection of sites, and the approach to management and future development. The Nomination Strategy proposes that the European frontiers, not covered by the current World Heritage property, should be nominated as three sections:

- ◆ the Lower German (i.e. Lower Rhine) frontier;
- ◆ the Danube frontier;
- ◆ the frontier of the Roman province of *Dacia*.

These sections would constitute three separate World Heritage properties, beside the existing serial World Heritage property. The four single properties would be joined under a common framework 'Frontiers of the Roman Empire', which could later be extended to properties in the Near East and North Africa.

2.a.2. THE DANUBE LIMES

For the largest of the three envisaged properties, the Danube frontier, previous cooperation projects such as the Culture 2000 project 'Frontiers of the Roman Empire' (2005–2008)⁵, the EU Central Europe project 'Danube Limes – UNESCO World Heritage' (2008–2011)⁶ and the EU South East Europe project 'Danube Limes Brand' (2012–2014)⁷ are demonstrations of successful cooperation by the States Parties involved in the envisaged property. Nevertheless, a nomination in two steps is proposed by the Thematic Study, for reasons of timetable management. The first step would concern the western segment consisting of the sites within the territories of Germany, Austria, Slovakia and Hungary, and the second step the eastern segment comprising the sites in Croatia, Serbia, Bulgaria and Romania.

The *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes (Western Segment)* is located within the territories of the States Parties of Germany, Austria and Slovakia. It constitutes the northern and eastern boundaries of the Roman provinces of Raetia (eastern half), Noricum and Pannonia (western half), running for about 600 km along the river Danube, from Bad Gögging in Germany to Iža in Slovakia (DE 205 km, AT 345 km, SK 30 km). Based on the systematic military occupation of the Danube banks which occurred during the Flavian dynasty (69–96 AD) the linear border defense system emerged and was developed. The first permanent legionary fortresses were established in the second half of the 1st century in Vindobona and Carnuntum. Due to the favourable geographic situation in Raetia and Noricum only auxiliary troops had to be stationed at that time, but during the Marcomannic war (167–180 AD) both provinces got a legion in Castra Regina and in Lauriacum.

As part of that system the Romans erected a continuous chain of military installations – legionary fortresses, forts, fortlets, watchtowers and in later periods so-called *burgi*, counter fortifications and bridgeheads as well as associated structures – with a distance of usually 10 to 30 kilometres in order to control traffic on the southern bank of the river and social interactions along and across the river. The neighbours from Eining to the Danube band in Hungary were German tribes. The connections between Rome and these barbarians were diplomatic treaties, and according to the power relations at times peaceful or hostile.

Within the serial nomination *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes (Western Segment)*, 77 component parts are nominated for inscription on the World Heritage List out of which two are situated

⁵ D.J. Breeze – S. Jilek (eds.), *Frontiers of the Roman Empire. The European Dimension of a World Heritage Site*. Culture 2000 Programme of the European Union. Edinburgh 2008.

⁶ http://www.southeast-europe.net/en/projects/approved_projects/?id=251 (accessed 26.01.2017).

⁷ <http://danubeLimesbrand.org/> (accessed 26.01.2017).

in the territory of the Slovak Republic: Bratislava-Rusovce – Gerulata, rímsky vojenský tábor (kastel) and Iža – “Kelemantia”, rímsky vojenský tábor (kastel), nominated under ID numbers 32 and 33 respectively.

2.a.3. THE DANUBE LIMES IN SLOVAKIA

In the 1st to the 4th centuries, the territory of today’s south-west Slovakia, inhabited by the German tribes of Marcomans and Quadi, was situated in the immediate vicinity of the Roman Empire. The expansion of the Roman Empire contributed to the incorporation of the territory of south-west Slovakia in the European context of historical events in this period. The natural northern border of the Empire in the province of Pannonia was formed by the Danube River, along which the Romans gradually built an extensive fortification system. Its inseparable parts constituted also two forts, Bratislava-Rusovce – Gerulata, rímsky vojenský tábor (kastel) and Iža – “Kelemantia”, rímsky vojenský tábor (kastel).

The Roman counter-fort in Iža was an outpost fort on the left bank of the Danube in the immediate bridgehead of the legionary fortress of Brigetio. It served mainly for border control and protection of the borders and the wider territory of the bridgehead of Brigetio. Gerulata was situated within the territory of Pannonia on the right bank of the Danube and served as an auxiliary fort which protected the east flank of *Carnuntum*.

Both forts are proof of the long-term (approximately 200 years) Roman military presence in the territory of present Slovakia.

2.b. Description of the nominated component parts situated in Slovakia

The management plan is prepared for two Roman military forts in the territory of Slovakia proposed for inscription on the World Heritage List as component parts No. 32 and No. 33 of the serial nomination *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes (Western Segment)*. The management plan concerns proposed core zones of Bratislava-Rusovce – Gerulata, rímsky vojenský tábor (kastel) and Iža – “Kelemantia”, rímsky vojenský tábor (kastel), and their buffer zones as well.

2.b.1. BRATISLAVA-RUSOVCE – GERULATA, RÍMSKY VOJENSKÝ TÁBOR (KASTEL)

2.b.1.1. Geographical Location

GPS of the site: E 660257,44 / N 5324811,95 (projection UTM 33U)

The Roman fort *Gerulata* is situated on the northeast edge of Rusovce, a borough of Bratislava, the capital of the Slovak Republic. The adjacent territory is characterized by a mildly profiled lowland terrain with an elevation of 130 to 136 meters above sea level.

2.b.1.2. History

The auxiliary fort *Gerulata* had an important strategic function – to protect the east flank of the legions stationed at *Carnuntum*. The military unit *Ala I Cannanefatum* was based here strategically to guard the northern end of a relatively extensive area in which the main body of the Danube river spreads out into an inland delta. The Romans probably took the name *Gerulata* from the local Celtic population. The construction of the fort began during the reign of the Flavian dynasty (69 – 96 AD) and four construction stages were identified in its development. The location and extent of the fort during the first stage of construction (around 80 AD – 170 AD), in a form of a wood-clay fortlet, is indicated by its double v-shaped

ditch. The fortlet was rebuilt into a larger stone fort during the second construction stage (after 170 AD – end of the 3rd century). Archaeological excavations have shown that extremely intensive building work took place at *Gerulata* at the end of the 3rd century and during the 4th century, meaning the third stage in the construction of the fort (up to 380 AD), connected with the military reforms under the emperors Gallienus and Diocletian. This version of the fort had a smaller, nearly square-shaped area (200 x 200 m) and was enclosed by massive fortified stone walls. In the years around 380 AD the defensive system on the Pannonian frontier underwent structural changes as a result of which the fourth stage of construction took place. The Roman garrison gave up the original *Gerulata* fort's area and built a smaller, fortified watchtower in the left corner of the *praetenturae* of the original auxiliary fort. Similar small forts have been found within the perimeter of older forts on the Norican and Pannonian Limes and are dated to the post-Valentinian period.

In 433 the Roman Empire concluded a treaty (*foedus*) granting Pannonia to the Huns. The borders were abandoned and maintaining the defensive system lost its sense. The border system on the lower Danube remained more or less intact until the end of the 6th century, when Avars and Slavs crossed the Danube into the territory of the Roman provinces. The first written mentions of ancient *Gerulata* date from Roman times and can be found in the "*Itinerari Antonini*" and the "*Notitia Dignitatum*". The location of the fort is also shown on the medieval copy of a third century C.E. Roman map, the "*Tabula Peutingeriana*".

2.b.1.3. Description

Area of the nominated component part is delimited by the boundaries of the national cultural monument no. 344/1 Rímsky kastel Gerulata, situated along the northern end of the Gerulatská street in Bratislava-Rusovce, on plots no. 114 and 115. The nearly square-shaped fort was protected by a stone wall, defensive ditch, ramparts and gates on each side of a right-angled plan. Based on results of the archaeological research, it is possible to identify four construction phases of the fort, its contemporary presentation shows the fourth stage of construction – a fortified stone tower (29 x 30 m), which was built into the corner of the older fort.

The tower had 12 massive pillars forming a courtyard. The depth of the foundations of the pillars and the perimeter walls of the tower (3 – 4 m) indicate that the tower could have had up to three storeys. Near the centre there is an asymmetrically positioned well, which is today indicated by a copy of the original well. On the east side of the fort an original interior floor from the fourth construction phase has survived. Currently, sections of the fort's bare walls are presented *in situ* within the framework of the exterior premises of the museum "Ancient Gerulata" in Rusovce.

2.b.1.3.1. Walls

Currently, sections of the bare walls are presented *in situ* in the exterior of the premises of the Museum "Ancient Gerulata in Rusovce", which is part of the Bratislava City Museum. The remaining parts of the fort outside the museum area are situated underground (they are partially documented by archaeological research), 40 cm up to 2.5 m under the surface without any intervention, frequently under later building structures.

2.b.1.3.2. Findings And Collections, Their Location

Epigraphic sources, findings of architectonic elements, fragments of artistic stone work and a number of findings of material culture from Gerulata form part of the exposition of the Ancient Gerulata Museum in Rusovce. A comprehensive information system about the fort and the ancient monuments in Rusovce and their classification within the Limes Romanus are also located in the museum premises.

2.b.1.4. Buffer Zone

Buffer zone of the nominated component part represents the Protected Historic Zone Rusovce which was declared in 1992. The buffer zone covers almost the entire city borough of Rusovce and the natural environment in the space between the built up area and the Danube River. The main principles of town planning and the architectural design of this part of Rusovce are based on respecting the preserved urban structure with its simultaneous revitalizing. Fundamental in terms of historical value is the archaeological site of the Roman Military Fort (kastel) Gerulata with its urban complex of civilian settlements and burial grounds. Requirements of protection are stipulated and supervised by the Regional Monuments Board Bratislava.

The existence of the Gerulata complex and the archaeological findings are crucial for all types of construction activities in the area between the Danube branch, the western edges of the protected historic zone delimited by the Balkánska Street and the park of the manor-house of Rusovce. Due to its location, the city borough of Rusovce is in particular predetermined for residential purposes – with family houses, structures for public administration and cultural and social infrastructure, it is also relevant as a recreational destination of wider significance. Extension of the aforementioned functions in the given territory is regulated to ensure the primary protection of the archaeological layer. Archaeological research must precede every new development in the buffer zone.

2.b.2. IŽA – “KELEMANTIA”, RÍMSKY VOJENSKÝ TÁBOR (KASTEL)⁸

2.b.2.1. Geographical Location

GPS of the site: E 290131,38 / N 5291764,16 (projection UTM 34T)

The remains of the counter-fort are located east of the town of Komárno, approximately 2.2 km southwest of the centre of the municipality of Iža, in location called Leányvár, on the left bank of the Danube, at an elevation of approximately 108 – 111 meters above sea level. Its area appears slightly above the surrounding flat plain terrain as a square-shaped low ridge accentuated in the western, northern and eastern part by the residues of ramparts and ditches. The surface is grass covered, lined with a row of trees in the north-west.

2.b.2.2. History

The Roman counter-fort in Iža, at the bridgehead of Brigetio, came into existence at the turning point of the Marcomannic Wars. Research results have proven two main construction stages in the fort's development. The 1st stage, the wood-clay fort was built around 175–179 AD not as a temporary but as a permanent structure. The construction technology featured significantly wide walls and an ingenious drainage system that allowed for the building of firm, stable and durable structures of considerable size for barracks and other buildings. It is probable that, after the destruction of the wooden-clay fort, shortly before the end of the war, several military units were stationed in five temporary camps in the fort's close surroundings (discovered by the aerial survey in 1990).

⁸ According to Ján Rajtár, the original ancient name of the Roman camp in Iža is unknown. It is not directly documented in any preserved written sources or inscriptions. According to the identical geographical data by Claudius Ptolemaeus about Brigetio and the site entitled Kelemantia (also Celemantia/Kelamantia/Celamantia) in his work “Geographia”, certain authors in older historical and archaeological literature identified the Roman camp in Iža with this name (*Kurucz 1914, 29-30; Barkóczy 1951, 17; Mócsy 1962, 641; Svoboda 1962, 400-401, 420*). However it is not in compliance with the most recent archaeological research, according to which the first Roman fortification on the left-bank bridgehead of Brigetio was built after the death of Claudius Ptolemaeus.

The modern Hungarian name of the site of the Roman camp in Iža “Leányvár” (i.e. Virgin's castle – Dievčí hrad, Devín, Mädchenburg), which is documented since the beginning of the 18th century, could have originated from a folk legends.

The 2nd stage, construction of a stone counter-fort, was probably launched shortly after the end of the Marcomannic Wars under the rule of Commodus (180–192). The counter-fort, which was fortified by a stone wall, was of a regular square floor plan with an area of over 3 ha with rounded corners. Extensive reconstructions of the fortification from the 4th century with a protruding bastion, additional u-shaped structures added to the fan shaped or round gate towers to the corner towers were among the new fortification elements of the Constantine and Valerian period. The western, northern and eastern walls were circled by two (later even five) protective trenches which increased the defendability of the fort. The reason for building so massive fortification walls in Iža was probably due to its location as the outpost on the left bank of the Danube. It was built to hold off strong attacks until reinforcements from the other side of the Danube arrived.

The counter-fort stood almost until the end of the 4th century – the end of the Roman power on the north-Pannonian border. It is still not clear whether it was abandoned by its Roman garrison or plundered. According to the identical geographical data in *Geographia* by Claudius Ptolemaeus about Brigetio and the site entitled *Kelemantia*, certain authors in older historical and archaeological literature identified the Roman counter-fort in Iža with this name. However, this name is not generally accepted by contemporary authors.

2.b.2.3. Description

Area of the nominated component part is delimited by the boundaries of the national cultural monument no. 289/1 Rímsky vojenský tábor (kastel) in Iža which form almost a square shape with a side length of approximately 172 m, determined from the south by the earthen embankment of the Danube river, from the north by a dirt road parallel with the river, from the west and the east by an archaeological base station and a shooting training ground respectively.

At the end of the Marcomannic Wars, the Romans built a massive stone fort on the site of a destroyed wood-clay construction with a permanent military garrison. The fortification walls rose to the height of 4 – 5 m. A large part of the ruins of the counter-fort buildings remain buried under the ground. All that can be seen are certain parts uncovered by archaeological research, generally, torsos of foundations of the original massive stone walls.

The area of the counter-fort with uncovered parts of the architecture, supplemented with information panels containing texts and drawn reconstructions, is freely accessible for visitors. The adjacent temporary camps have been investigated by aerial archaeology and test surveys, their vestiges remain under ground and are included in the fort's buffer zone.

2. b. 2. 3. 1. Walling

Currently, sections of the bare stone castle uncovered by archaeological research are displayed outdoors in the form of stabilized walls (part of the fortification, well) or covered findings (cistern). Part of findings still awaits treatment and a significant part is covered by dirt approximately 2 meters under the present terrain.

2.b.2.3.2. Findings and Collections, Their Location

The findings and collections are deposited in the Podunajské Museum in Komárno – in Roman Lapidarium, and in other expositions of this museum. Roman Lapidarium Exposition located in the largest bastion No. VI of Komárno fortification system presents the Roman stone sculpture monuments (altars and tomb stones, sarcophagi, sculptures, architectural articles) from the 1st to 4th century AD, including stone artefacts from the site in Iža – Kelemantia. Some of the findings from archaeological research are deposited at the Archaeological Institute of the Slovak Academy of Sciences in Nitra.

2.b.2.4. Buffer Zone

The buffer zone is designed for ensuring the preservation, protection and presentation of the values of the immovable national cultural monument of the archaeological site of the castle in Iža Leányvár. It is defined to create space for the protection of the natural environment of an immovable national cultural monument and potential future archaeological findings. Since 2011, the buffer zone's extent has been broadened to fully encompass identified vestiges of temporary camps which surrounded the Roman fort.

The area of the proposed buffer zone is designed with consideration and respect for the natural character of the territory and the visual integrity of the site with the municipality. The boundaries of the territory are created by natural barriers such as banks of streams, northwards the banks of the Iža channel – the Small Danube, southwards the banks of the Danube River, eastwards the concrete slab access road from the municipality of Iža to the banks of the Danube and to the Roman fort's remains, and westwards by the edges (with no built constructions) of the cadastre of the municipality of Komárno, part Harčáš.

The buffer zone of the component part was declared as the Protective Zone of the national cultural monument *Rímsky vojenský tábor (kastel) v Iži* in 2015 by the Decision of the Monuments Board of the Slovak Republic no. 2015/126-28/56278. Requirements of protection are supervised by the Regional Monuments Board Nitra.

The area of proposed buffer zone is formed by a slightly rolling plain on the left bank of Danube River, delimited around the national cultural monument so as to enable protection of the surrounding of the monument within cultural landscape. Part of the area of buffer zone is intensively used for the agricultural and water management purposes, which partially interferes with natural overall character of the landscape, where farmed fields alternate with grassed meadows with sporadic floodplain vegetation. The most distinctive elevation in the area is the flood bank with its relevant technical background. The flood bank forms imaginary eastern/western axis of the buffer zone and, at the same time, a communication route (bicycle, pedestrian) between Komárno – Iža and Patince.

The area of the outpost Roman fortification – the fort – is located on a natural elevation, protected from the north by a corridor of marshes and wetlands that formed a natural barrier between the fort and original Germanic population with their assumed settlements located northwards from the wetlands. Photographic aerial survey and follow-up remote sensing from the height of 400 m, performed in the years 1990-1991, enabled to identify individual so-called temporary camps, which are marked in the map below. The found camps do not overlap one another and have different dimensions. Following the photometric surveying, the camps were subject to geophysical survey. However, due to used method with proton magnetometer and dipole electromagnetic profiling and low level of underground water, results of the measurements are inconclusive.

All activities within the territory of the buffer zone are required to respect the Preservation principles defined in order to create a space for protection of the natural environment of the immovable national cultural monument *Rímsky vojenský tábor (kastel) in Iža* and other anticipated archaeological findings and sites. Each activity within the buffer zone of the national cultural monument must be in accordance with interests regarding the protection of the heritage values of the national cultural heritage and its environment. Each person shall act so that favourable conditions for the protection of fragile landscape, architectural, urban and archaeological values of a national cultural monument are created and maintained. Negative interference with its landscape environment and their disruptive effects must be eliminated as much as possible concerning the use and possible adjustments of the buffer zone.

At assessment of each activity and its potential impact and consequences, the landscape, spatial and urban context of the site and its wider surroundings must be taken into account. Each activity, adjustment, renewal, and tangible reconstruction affecting an exterior of existing buildings, terrain and roads located within the buffer zone are subject to the approval of the authorized Regional Monuments

Board in Nitra, which issues its binding decision on each particular plan. Construction activities and earthworks in the buffer zone are subject to the decision of the Regional Monuments Board in Nitra on necessity to carry out an archaeological research.

2.c. Values Of The Property

2.c.1. PROPOSED STATEMENT OF OUTSTANDING UNIVERSAL VALUE FOR FRONTIERS OF THE ROMAN EMPIRE – THE DANUBE LIMES (WESTERN SEGMENT)

a) Brief synthesis

The *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes (Western Segment)* was a river frontier, running for about 600 km along the Danube, from Bad Gögging in Germany through Austria to Iža in Slovakia, constituting the middle European boundary of the Roman Empire against the ‘barbarians’. This frontier faced varying topography from densely wooded areas to plains. The river Danube formed a frontier from the 1st century AD for more than 400 years. The military infrastructures at carefully chosen sites consisted of fortifications of legionary fortresses and auxiliary forts with their associated civil structures, located at irregular intervals according to the regional topography. Clusters of temporary camps, fortlets, bridgeheads on both sides of the Danube and a chain of watchtowers along the river and the parallel Limes road are special assets of this property. The varying sizes and compositions of the garrisons recruited all over the Roman Empire attempted a well-balanced system of linear survey and interaction with the hinterland and the areas beyond the river. The river itself belonged to Rome and was a transport route in military and civil, commercial sense. Key value is the evolution of military strategies to counter the threats emanating from sustained large-scale migration.

The wars of AD 166–180 and those in the middle of the 3rd century AD caused a serious disruption of the development of this frontier with the result of a strengthening of the military installations afterwards. The last significant overall military building process took place in the 4th century. The Danube Limes finally broke down in the 5th century. For topographical reasons many Roman buildings still standing were reused by people in the Middle Ages along its line. Therefore, Roman military sites served as nuclei for present day villages and towns, sometimes incorporating the remains of the buildings even today.

b) Justification for Criteria

Criterion (ii): The nominated property exhibits an important interchange of human values, over a span of time or within a cultural area of the world, on developments in architecture or technology, monumental arts, town-planning or landscape design.

The extant remains of the *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes (Western Segment)* constitute significant elements of the Roman Frontiers present in Europe. With its legionary fortresses, forts, fortlets, watchtowers, linked infrastructure and civilian architecture it exhibits an important interchange of human and cultural values at the apogee of the Roman Empire, through the development of Roman military architecture, extending the technical knowledge of construction and management to the very edges of the Empire. It reflects the imposition of a complex frontier system on the existing societies of the northern part of the Roman Empire, introducing for the first time military installations and related civilian settlements, linked through an extensive supporting network based on the river Danube. The frontier did not constitute an impregnable barrier, but controlled and allowed the movement of peoples: not only the military units, but also civilians and merchants. Hence, it triggered the exchange of cultural values through movement of soldiers and civilians from different nations. This entailed profound changes and developments in terms of settlement patterns, architecture and landscape design and spatial organization.

Criterion (iii): The nominated property bears a unique or at least exceptional testimony to a cultural tradition or to a civilization which is living or which has disappeared.

The nominated property *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes (Western Segment)* has an extraordinarily high cultural value as it shows the interaction of occupying force with the local people and circumstances. It bears an exceptional testimony to the maximum extension of the power of the Roman Empire through the consolidation of its northern frontiers and thus constitutes a physical manifestation of Roman imperial policy. It illustrates the Roman Empire's ambition to dominate the world in order to establish its law and way of life there in a long-term perspective. It witnesses Roman colonization in the respective territories, the spread of Roman culture and its different traditions – military, engineering, architecture, religion management and politics – and the large number of human settlements associated with the defences, which contribute to an understanding of how soldiers and their families lived in this part of the Roman Empire. The property also adds some specific features to the variation and evolution of the military strategies applied by the Roman Empire to control external 'barbarian' societies.

Criterion (iv): The nominated property is an outstanding example of a type of building, architectural or technological ensemble or landscape which illustrates (a) significant stage(s) in human history.

The *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes (Western Segment)* is an outstanding example of Roman military architecture and technological development through four centuries, adapting standardized approaches to various geographical and strategic conditions. Following different needs in some parts the military installations controlled mainly segments of the river. Other sectors are characterized by a dense chain of watchtowers following the Danube between the forts over hundreds of kilometres connected by the Limes road. This demonstrates the similarity in purpose and design of the river frontier with artificial linear frontiers. Military campaigns are reflected by temporary camps built by troops drawn together around existing forts. For the sake of a more effective defence a series of bridgeheads were built on both river banks. In Late Roman times the *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes (Western Segment)* show the changes of warfare through new developments in military architecture (horseshoe- and fan-shaped towers; strongly fortified fortlets). Many of these constructions became the nuclei of later settlements. Through their continuous use till today they are eminently accountable for our impression of medieval towns along the Danube.

c) Statement of Integrity

The nominated component parts of the *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes (Western Segment)* convey the extraordinary complexity and coherence of Roman frontier installations. Although some parts have been affected by changes of land use and natural processes, the integrity of the property is demonstrated through its visible remains and buried archaeological features. Their state of survival has been researched intensively in many areas through archaeological excavations, the processing of archival records as well as aerial photography, geophysical and field surveys. Several components have been built over, but where relevant archaeological remains have been proven to exist they have been included in the property. The selection for the nomination is significant for all the elements which once constituted the frontier system. They visualize the topographic specifics and the intensive cultural exchange. They represent the long period in which the Danube formed parts of the frontiers of the Roman Empire. Therefore, through its wholeness and intactness the *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes (Western Segment)* have a high integrity.

d) Statement of Authenticity

The nominated component parts of the *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes (Western Segment)* have a high level of authenticity, carried by their structure, design, material form and function, each having been verified through intensive study and research. Some of the sites have been and are visible as standing monuments, while others were made visible through archaeological investigations. The component parts have been conserved or their conservation is an ongoing process. The materials and substance of underground archaeological remains are well-preserved, as are upstanding and visible remains. Although their surroundings are sometimes built up by later medieval and more recent buildings the nominated component parts are authentic. The form and design of each representative part of the property and its associated structures are clear and comprehensible. Their location and setting demonstrate the Roman strategic pattern and contribute to their authenticity. Later development

overlying parts of the frontier are treated as vertical buffer zones. There are a small number of reconstructions of elements of the frontier such as parts of forts and civil structures, however, they either incorporate the original or try to be as close as possible to it.

e) Requirements for protection and management

The nominated component parts of the *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes (Western Segment)* are legally protected by the national and state laws of the three participating States Parties (Austria, Germany and Slovakia). According to the general legal systems much of the responsibility rests with the owners of the sites and the local and regional governments. Within each State Party an appropriate management system has been developed, expressed through a national Management Plan for the identification, protection, conservation and sustainable use of the respective component part. It will be regularly updated. The national management systems address also the interests and involvement of all stakeholders and the sustainable economic use of the property.

At the international level the States Parties of the nominated property have agreed on an integrated management system consisting of two closely cooperating and interacting bodies: The Inter-Governmental Committee-Danube Limes (IGC DL) to oversee and coordinate the overall management at an international level, and the Management Group-Danube Limes (MG DL) which assembles those directly responsible for the site management of the property and provides the primary mechanism for sharing best practice.

On a supra-national level the *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes (Western Segment)* wants to cooperate intensively with the existing WHS 'Frontiers of the Roman Empire' in what has been called in the Thematic Study a 'cluster'. The existing Bratislava Group, an international advisory body, will serve as structural framework.

2.c.2. CONTRIBUTION OF THE NOMINATED COMPONENT PARTS NO. 32 AND NO. 33 TO THE OUTSTANDING UNIVERSAL VALUE OF THE PROPERTY AS A WHOLE

a) Bratislava-Rusovce – Gerulata, rímsky vojenský tábor (kastel)

- ◆ The Roman Fort *Gerulata* in Rusovce was an integral part of the frontier fortifications of the northern Pannonian portion and the first in the *Carnuntum – Ad Flexum* line. Its construction-historical development distinctively reflects the entire gradual and long-term development of Roman fortification architecture in this section of the Danube limits from the beginning of its construction up to the building of the late-antic fortification in the post-Valentinian period around 380 AD.
- ◆ At the same time, it is testimony to the intensive settlement of this space from the end of the 1st century to the end of the 4th century. *Gerulata* is one of the forts with the longest history and continuous inhabitation throughout the existence of the Limes.
- ◆ Preserved masonry, stonework features, and polychromatic wall decorations provide evidence of the technical perfection and maturity of Roman building techniques and noteworthy attractiveness of Roman works of architecture also at the periphery – frontier of the Roman Empire.
- ◆ Unique finds from *Gerulata* include the first and only brick with the stamp of the Cananefatian cavalry, a milestone for the route *Carnuntum–Gerulata* and the find of a legionary denarius bearing the stamp of the XIX legion, which was destroyed at the Battle of the Teutoburg Forest.

b) Iža – “Kelemantia”, římský vojenský tábor (kastel)

- ◆ The Roman counter-fort in Iža is the only identified permanent fort in the northern Pannonian portion of the Limes. It was an outpost, constructed at the bridgehead of the important legionary and civilian town of *Brigetio*, and situated beyond the Empire’s border on the left (northern) bank of the Danube; in the so-called *Barbaricum* territory.
- ◆ It is a unique proof of the long-term military presence of Romans on the northern bank of the Danube and one of the most extensive Roman construction complexes in *Barbaricum* in general.
- ◆ It is a proof of the notably advanced Roman architecture that efficiently utilised technologies and local or more distant material resources available for various construction and fortification structures, and thus also evidence of the outstanding technological, logistics and transportation abilities of the Romans.

Several temporary camps surrounding the counter-fort in Iža, attested by aerial survey, belong to the period of the Marcomannic Wars, and similarly to their analogies on the Hungarian territory, they represent exceptional sources of the Roman military history.

3. Current State Of Preservation And Potential Risk Factors Affecting The Nominated Component Parts

Due to the joint action between professional institutions providing monuments protection, administration and archaeological research, both nominated component parts situated in Slovakia are currently in good state of conservation. They enjoy the highest form of monument protection, enabled by the Slovak legislation; they have ensured the long-term continuation of archaeological research and the regular monitoring of their state of conservation. In order to preserve their integrity and authenticity, any interference into the component part, as well as any building and development activities in its buffer zone, are subject to the approval process of the respective regional monuments board and must be consistent with the adopted conceptual documents.

None of the nominated component parts experiences particular pressure for change on the basis of development plans, natural influences or tourism in a way that the proposed OUV could be damaged.

3.a. Bratislava-Rusovce – Gerulata, rímsky vojenský tábor (kastel)

Part of the fort *Gerulata* proposed for entry on the World Heritage List forms the area of “Ancient Gerulata” museum, and is used for research and presentation purposes. It is situated within the civil settlement of the Bratislava-Rusovce municipality whose buildings cover other parts of the fort, adjacent vicus and cemeteries.

The museum area provides an exterior in-situ exposition of uncovered remains of the post-Valentinian fort (where possible, copies are used and the originals are protected from the effects of climate and weather) open for the general public, an interior presentation of movable findings from Gerulata, also an archaeological station with safe deposit for unexhibited findings, and a separate section where archaeological excavations are ongoing.

POTENTIAL RISK FACTORS:

- a) Development pressures: the fort’s buffer zone is affected by growing intensity of houses building around Gerulata and malfunctions of underground utilities in Rusovce (gas, water, sewerage). For all construction changes preventive excavations or archaeological monitoring are prerequisites.
- b) Tourism: the intensity of tourism along the Danube is steadily growing, but the number of visitors to the nominated component part is adequate and the most preferred form is individual tourism by bicycle. Responsible visitation is monitored and, where necessary, regulated by the Ancient Gerulata Museum. Planned reconstruction of the Ancient Gerulata museum with new exposition and information system guarantee adequate regulation of tourism.
- c) Frost: the risk of frost damage is particularly high due to dozens of freeze-thaw cycles that can occur every year. After the ruins have been exposed particular conserving interventions are applied guaranteed by expert restorers and controlled by strict official supervision.
- d) Flooding: flooding may occur in the event of disturbance of the embankments particularly on the Danube River. The protective embankments with a minimum of HQ 100 are built along the Danube River near the component part and high water is restrained in inundation areas between the embankments. Flood commissions are established at all management levels.

- e) Other: it is not possible to completely exclude a threat of metal detecting and illegal excavations. However, all indicated illegal excavations or metal detecting are classified as criminal offenses and prosecuted under the Slovak Criminal Code. The prevention of vandalism is secured by monitoring of the area by museum, municipality and inhabitants.

3.b. Iža – “Kelemantia”, rímsky vojenský tábor (kastel)

The territory of the counter-fort is presented as an in-situ, open-air archaeological site where a section of the bare walls of fortification are presented, and where a predominant part of the findings continues to lie underground. No permanent buildings are situated in the area, it has been exempt from the agricultural land fund since 1957 and since then no agricultural activities are carried out there. All researched and uncovered sections from the excavations from the beginning of the 20th century were buried again and are covered with grass. Thus their protection is ensured. The only structure, which remains unburied, is a cistern with a large section of preserved original Roman walls and plaster. It is now protected by a stable wooden tiled shelter.

Selected structures researched through the second half of the 20th century remained uncovered in excavation areas and were conserved at the approximate level from the period of the counter-fort's construction at the end of the 2nd century. Movable archaeological findings are deposited and presented at the Podunajské Museum in Komárno.

POTENTIAL RISK FACTORS:

- a) Development pressures: there is an intension to build a new traffic bypass around the fort's buffer zone, which needs to be visually eliminated. Also a hunters' association shooting range is situated next to the northeast section of the fort which forms a large disturbing element in the area and its removal is required.
- b) Agriculture: agricultural land forms most of the fort's buffer zone and is intensively used for grain growing and water-management purposes. Preservation Principles of the buffer zone represent a basic instrument for the prevention of threats and strongly regulate current as well as future land use activities, especially the depth of plowing.
- c) Tourism: the intensity of tourism along the Danube is steadily growing, but the number of visitors to the nominated component part is adequate and the most preferred form is individual tourism by bicycle. The component part lies outside the inhabited area and is presented as an open-air museum. Cyclist routes, situated on the embankment of Danube River, run in close proximity to the component part.
- d) Frost: the risk of frost damage is particularly high due to dozens of freeze-thaw cycles that can occur every year. After the ruins have been exposed particular conserving interventions are applied guaranteed by expert restorers and controlled by strict official supervision.
- e) Flooding: flooding may occur in the event of disturbance of the embankments particularly on the Danube and Váh Rivers. The protective embankments with a minimum of HQ 100 are built along the Danube River near the component part and high water is restrained in inundation areas between the embankments. Flood commissions are established at all management levels.
- f) Other: a threat of metal detecting and illegal excavations is considerable since the component part lies several kilometres from the inhabited area therefore is the fort's territory frequently monitored by the Archaeological Institute, museum and municipality. All indicated illegal excavations or metal detecting are classified as criminal offenses and prosecuted under the Slovak Criminal Code.

The detailed analysis of other factors affecting the component parts, potential threats, problems and challenges, as well as an extensive description of their needs and possibilities in the fields of monitoring,

financing, sustainable tourism, education, promotion and publication activities are *provided* in the 2011 version of the management plan for the Danube Limes in Slovakia: *Pinčíková, Ľ. – Janovská, M.: Danube Limes in Slovakia – Ancient Roman Monuments on the Middle Danube, Management Plan 2011 – 2021, Pamiatkový úrad SR, Bratislava 2011, 96 s. <http://www.pamiatky.sk/sk/page/dunajsky-limes>*

4. Management of the Danube Limes

4.a. International Framework⁹

The nominated component parts of the *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes (Western Segment)* are legally protected by the national and state laws of the three participating States Parties (Germany, Austria and Slovakia). Within each State Party an appropriate management system has been developed, expressed through a regularly updated Management Plan for the identification, protection, conservation and sustainable use of the respective component part. The national management systems address also the interests and involvement of all stakeholders and the sustainable economic use of the property.

The States Parties involved attach great value to international collaboration as a means to promote the presentation, management and development of the heritage of the European frontiers, by joint initiatives and exchange of experiences. Therefore, the States Parties of the nominated property have agreed on an integrated management system consisting of two closely cooperating and interacting bodies: The *Intergovernmental Committee for the Frontiers of the Roman Empire – Danube Limes* (IGC DL) to oversee and coordinate the overall management at an international level, and the *Management Group for the Frontiers of the Roman Empire – Danube Limes* (MG DL) which assembles those directly responsible for the site management of the property and provides the primary mechanism for sharing best practice.

The aims of a joint management system for the Frontiers of the Roman Empire in Europe include “to achieve common standards of identification, recording, research, protection, conservation, management, presentation and understanding of the Roman frontier, above and below ground, in an inter-disciplinary manner and within a sustainable framework”. These aims are fully shared by the States Parties involved in the preparation of the nomination of the *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes (Western Segment)*.

Since it is no longer envisaged to extend the inscribed property *Frontiers of the Roman Empire* (ref. 430ter), a new overarching framework is needed to support international collaboration in those fields relevant to the overall management and development of the Frontiers of the Roman Empire in Europe as World Heritage. It is the ambition of the States Parties involved to realise such a framework, which is provisionally labelled ‘Frontiers of the Roman Empire World Heritage Cluster’ (hereafter: Cluster). The Cluster will include both the inscribed and envisaged properties in Europe, and will be open to future extension with frontier sections in North Africa and the Near East.

The primary aims of the Cluster are the presentation of the World Heritage of the Roman frontiers as a single, coherent monument and the furthering of international cooperation to facilitate management and development of the properties. The existing Bratislava Group will form the basis. This is an international scientific advisory body with expert members from States Parties containing inscribed or potential parts of the WHS FRE. The Bratislava Group aims to share knowledge and experience of Roman frontiers and their identification, protection, conservation, management and presentation, leading to the distillation of a common viewpoint. Through technical and professional advice the Bratislava Group provides a scientific framework for the whole of the Roman frontiers.

⁹ Quoted from the nomination dossier *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes (Western Segment)*(2017), shortened.

4.b. Management system of the Danube Limes in Slovakia

The Management plan 2011–2021, Danube Limes in Slovakia, Ancient Roman Monuments on the Middle Danube and the Update of the Management Plan 2017 – 2021, Frontiers of the Roman Empire, The Danube Limes in Slovakia are the basic instruments for ensuring the efficient preservation of the proposed outstanding universal value and adequate state of preservation of the authenticity and integrity of Slovak component parts in the time of their inscription and for its improvement in the future. The management system establishes the method, tools and time frame for ensuring the protection of the sites and their heritage values. It designates the vision, direction and suitable activities for the short-, medium- and long-term aspects of the management. It also uses and interconnects all existing instruments affecting the spatial development and protection of the site, the system identifies the needs, problems and threats and conducts their solving process.

At the national level, the preservation of both nominated components is carried out by:

- ◆ The Government of the Slovak Republic – through the implementation and control of the Slovak Government Resolution No. 706/B3
- ◆ Ministry of Culture of the Slovak Republic
- ◆ Monuments Board of the Slovak Republic

Specifically for the World Cultural Heritage sites:

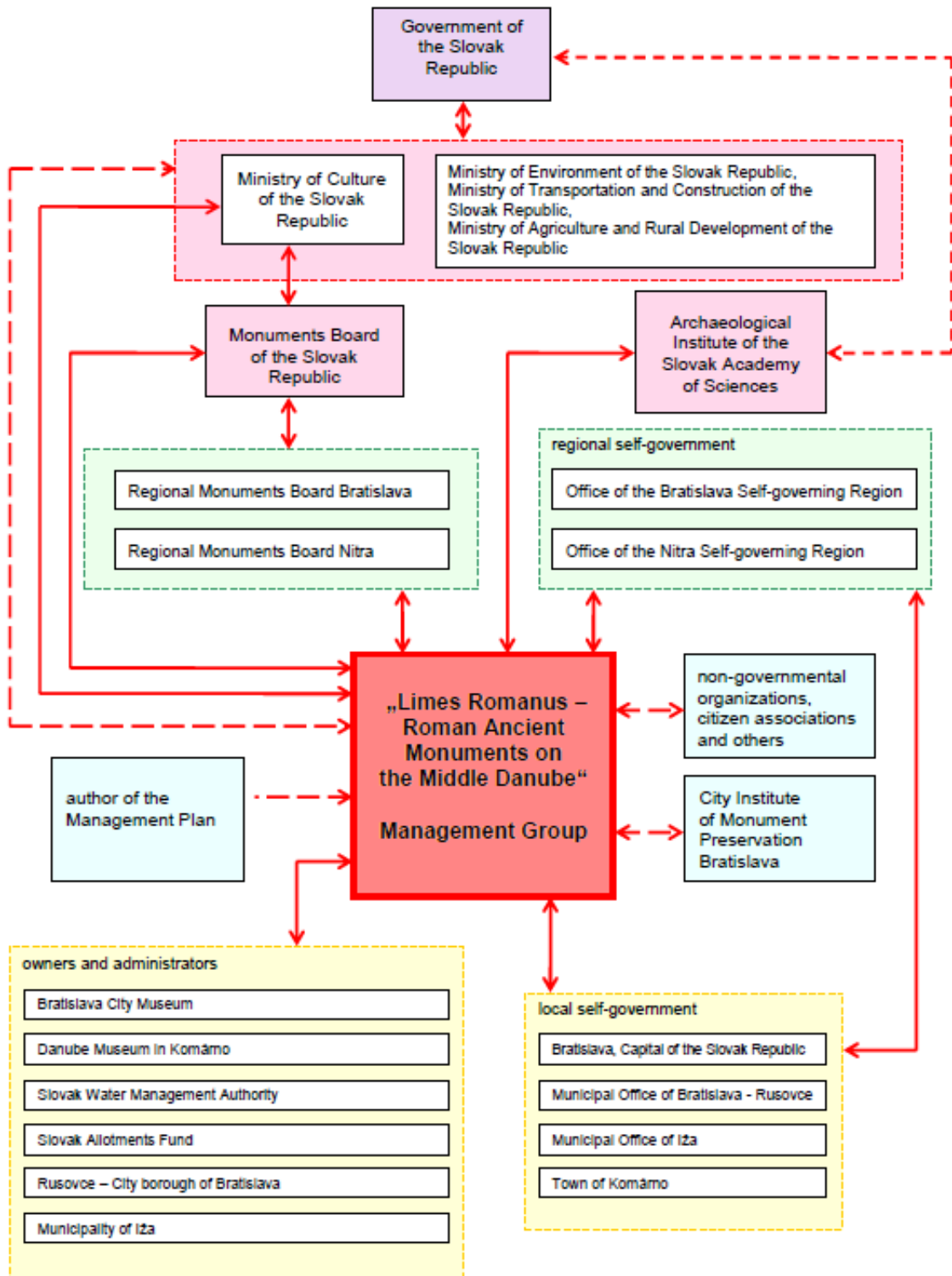
- ◆ Commission for the Coordination of the Tasks of the World Cultural Heritage Protection – this is a special body established for the World Cultural Heritage sites only and it plays a significant role in resolving the inter-ministerial tasks concerning the preservation and protection of individual sites.

Site management at the regional level is executed by the self-governing regions of Bratislava and Nitra and the Regional Monuments Boards Bratislava and Nitra. Management at the local level is ensured by the owners of the nominated component parts. In the near future we anticipate the strengthening of management for the Roman counter-fort in Iža, because steps are underway to simplify the ownership relations in favour of the Nitra self-governing region, which would make the management much more efficient. As the basic management body the Management Group Limes Romanus – Ancient Roman Monuments on the Middle Danube (MG Limes) has been created in the year 2011, but began its work earlier and actively cooperated in the preparation of a first draft of the management plan. All tasks established in the management plan of the MG Limes are ensured through its members. The MG Limes is an independent managing body that brings together all parties interested in site management at the local, regional and national levels in order to jointly and directly (without intermediation) address the needs and problems of the component parts.

The members of the MG Limes signed the declaration, based on which they will do everything possible by joining forces to preserve, present, promote and suitably use these unique monuments including their buffer zones in compliance with preservation of their monument value. They agreed on the joint management, activities and schedule of sessions and worked on the preparation of this management plan. The Management plan encompasses the existing management and protection systems at all management levels. The original Management plan was prepared in 2011 during the preparation for nomination within the Central Europe 2007–2013 project Danube Limes – UNESCO World Heritage. In the course of 2017, the Management plan was updated and its update was approved at the meeting of the management group, which took place on 10 November 2017. The update reflects changes in the strategy and scope of the nomination through the past five years when the Slovak Republic (in line with the recommendations of the World Heritage Centre and ICOMOS) synchronized and harmonized with the surrounding countries and they agreed to submit the nomination of the site *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – the Danube Limes (Western Segment)* for inclusion in the World Heritage List as a joint, cross-border, serial nomination in cooperation of Austria, Germany and Slovakia.

The updated Management plan takes into account the newly proposed outstanding universal value of the site and the wider international context of cooperation needed to ensure its effective protection and management. In its implementation part, it provides the overview of tasks carried out during the past five years, as well as a detailed list of the tasks planned for the next five years. The document is already in force and its action plan is gradually being fulfilled.

**Limes Romanus – Ancient Monuments on the Middle Danube
Management Group – Organization Scheme**



4.c. Update of the Action Plan for the Danube Limes in Slovakia

FULFILLING THE TASKS OF THE MANAGEMENT PLAN DANUBE LIMES IN SLOVAKIA		UPDATE OF THE TASKS OF THE MANAGEMENT PLAN DANUBE LIMES IN SLOVAKIA
- state of affairs as of 16 November 2017		for the years 2017 – 2021
Tasks for the years 2011 – 2021 (set in 2011 version of the Management Plan – part IV.)	Fulfilment of the tasks in the years 2011 – 2017 (state of affairs as of 16 November 2017)	Tasks for the years 2017 – 2021 (set at the MG Limes meeting on 10 November 2017 and supplemented by the MG Limes members up to 16 November 2017)
CONSIDERING THE IDENTIFIED POTENTIAL THREATS IT IS NECESSARY TO IMMEDIATELY BEGIN THE IMPLEMENTATION OF Urgent tasks		
Bratislava-Rusovce – Gerulata, rímsky vojenský tábor (kastel)		
To ensure the repair of presented parts of the fort and findings (parts damaged by weather conditions) – presentation implemented from 2006 to 2007 (according to the project and materials of the authors Jezná – Schmidtová: “Renovation of the Gerulata Ancient Camp in Rusovce”) – within the framework of 5-year long complaint period and warranty of completed work and to ensure their permanent maintenance – Bratislava City Museum (BCM), by the end of 2011. Responsible: BCM Date: 2011 – 2012	As part of the warranty period and warrantee for works performed, a repair of the presented parts of the fort was performed by the company VILLARD, monuments restoration. Responsible: BCM Date: 2012 Contract concluded with the Monuments Board via the project PRO MONUMENTA, for technical diagnostics of the state, and for preventive monitoring and regular maintenance of the presented parts of walls in the grounds of the Bratislava City Museum – Ancient Gerulata;. Responsible: BCM Cooperation: Monuments Board Date: 2015 – 2017 Fulfilled	Protection of an adequate state of preservation of the presented parts of the fort and findings: - monitoring of the state of preservation of masonry - technical diagnostics - regular maintenance of the monument Responsible: BCM Cooperation: the Monuments Board via the project PRO MONUMENTA Date: once monthly from March to October, ongoing
To secure funding for the reconstruction of the Ancient Gerulata Museum and its technological equipment Responsible: BCM in cooperation with the Bratislava City Council (BCC) Date: 2012	Funds secured from the Ministry of Culture Programme: “Let’s Renew our House”. Drafting of the study project documentation for reconstruction of the grounds of the Ancient Gerulata Museum. A survey was conducted in front of the Depository building, 1st stage (2016) and an archaeological survey at site 4. 1st stage – (question of locating the porta principalis sinistra, 2017) Responsible: BCM, BCC Date: 2012, 2014, 2016 Fulfilled	Performing a reconstruction of the museum In 2017 the BCM included this project into its budget. The BCM is applying also for financial support from the Norwegian financing mechanism and from the Ministry of Culture’s new programme “Let’s Renew our House – sub-programme 1.6” Responsible: BCM, BCC Date: according to date of receiving funding Continue in archaeological surveys within the grounds of the Ancient Gerulata Museum Responsible: BCM Date: ongoing, as needed
To ensure financing for the elaboration of the spatial plan for	Processing of the spatial plan of the zone Rusovce – centre, funding secured	Ongoing monitoring of compliance with the Principles of protection in the zone

Tasks for the years 2011 – 2021 (set in 2011 version of the Management Plan – part IV.)	Fulfilment of the tasks in the years 2011 – 2017 (state of affairs as of 16 November 2017)	Tasks for the years 2017 – 2021 (set at the MG Limes meeting on 10 November 2017 and supplemented by the MG Limes members up to 16 November 2017)
the zone Rusovce – centre To prepare the timing and financial timetable for elaboration (request to the Ministries of Culture and Transportation) Responsible: City borough (CB) Rusovce in cooperation with Bratislava City Council Date: end of 2011	from the Ministry of Culture’s programme “Let’s Renew our House”. Responsible: CB Rusovce Date: 2012 Fulfilled	Responsible: CB Rusovce, RMB BA Cooperation: MG Limes Date: ongoing
Updating of the Preservation Principles for the Protected Historic Zone Rusovce Responsible: RMB BA (RMB BA) Date: 2011	The updated Preservation Principles were adopted and are the applicable document, implemented in the spatial plan Fulfilled	Ensure and monitor compliance with the set conditions for the protection regime in the Protected Historic Zone Rusovce and in the spatial plan in cooperation with state and local authorities. Responsible: RMB BA, local self-government Date: permanent task
Iža – “Kelemantia”, rímsky vojenský tábor (kastel)		
Urgently ensure improvement of the deteriorated state (waterlogging and destruction of walls) of the cistern Responsible: owner of the cistern Date: 2011	Non-original fallen stones were removed; the cistern is protected by a shelter Date: 2015 Fulfilled	–
To declare a buffer zone for the national cultural monument (NCM) Roman fort in Iža Responsible: Monuments Board of the Slovak Republic (MB SR) Date: 2011	The newly defined buffer zone no. PUSR-2015/126-28/56278 was declared, including also a part of the Komárno-Veľký Harčáš area, where temporary Roman camps from the period of the Marcomannic wars are located. Fulfilled	Ongoing monitoring of compliance with the conditions of protection in the buffer zone Responsible: Iža municipality, Komárno town, RMB NR (RMB NR) Cooperation: MG Limes Date: permanent task
To ensure the maintenance of the entire fort’s area, also renew the readability of the information system – prepare the timetable of individual necessary actions (user’s manual) including responsible persons To ensure 1 seasonal worker for the maintenance of the fort in Iža Responsible: administrator of the NCM in coordination with the owners and the municipality, Archaeological Institute Date: 2011 – 2012	The fort’s information system was upgraded in 2015, new panels were made, damaged ones were repaired, and the noticeboard text was upgraded, cleaned. The administrator of the fort ensures regular maintenance of the whole area that is owned by the Nitra self-governing region (mowing, weeding, etc.) via an external specialised firm. The use of a seasonal temporary worker did not prove successful; maintenance is performed by an external firm. Fulfilled	Sustainable maintenance of the fort is insured via the Nitra self-governing region, which contributes €5000 annually to the Danube Museum in Komárno – administrator of the fort for its regular maintenance

Tasks for the years 2011 – 2021 (set in 2011 version of the Management Plan – part IV.)	Fulfilment of the tasks in the years 2011 – 2017 (state of affairs as of 16 November 2017)	Tasks for the years 2017 – 2021 (set at the MG Limes meeting on 10 November 2017 and supplemented by the MG Limes members up to 16 November 2017)
To instantly ensure at least: lawn mowing 2x a year and the removal of intrusive vegetation Responsible: Danube Museum in Komárno Date: December 2012	Weeding and hand mowing around the masonry ruins was performed by an external firm The Municipality of Iža secured mowing 2x up to 30 June 2017 along the edges of the cycle path at the section of the buffer zone 2/3 of the mowing of the area was performed by the Slovak Water Management Authority Fulfilled	Established as an ongoing activity with secured budget. The Municipality of Iža will continue to ensure mowing along the edges of the cycle path, as needed Responsible: Municipality of Iža Date: at least 4x in a year
To elaborate the Concept for the Renovation and Presentation of the NCM Roman Fort in Iža (hereinafter referred to as the “Concept”) – architectonic-urbanistic study NCM of the Roman Military Fort Iža – including the wider context Responsible: Danube Museum in Komárno (DM KN) Date: December 2011	Architectonic-urbanistic study was prepared in November 2011, author: doc. J. Gregorová, STU Bratislava Fulfilled	Monitor the progressive implementation of the project Responsible: DM KN Date: ongoing
To ensure necessary financing for the implementation of the Concept (see above) Responsible: DM KN Cooperation: owners of the NCM Date: according to the timetable proposed in the Concept	In 2010 – 2017 a total of €39 700 was spent from the funds of the Nitra self-governing region on restoration and maintenance of the fort, together with support via the “Let’s Renew our House” programme	Ongoing fulfilment
ELEMENTARY TOOLS FOR ACHIEVING THE SUSTAINABLE STATE OF PRESERVATION Implementation of the ongoing tasks		
To ensure the adequate preservation of the authentic uncovered and covered archaeological findings of all presented sections of the military forts and findings – within the intentions of the guidelines of RMB BA and RMB NR	Ongoing monitoring of the set tasks fulfilment	Prevention: monitoring the state of masonry conservation Technical diagnostics Regular maintenance of the monument Responsible: BCM, DM KN, RMBs, MB SR Date: ongoing
To ensure preservation of the sites’ integrity – by respecting the protection requirements	Ensured an adequate state of preservation of all authentic presented parts of military forts. Continuation of cooperation with PRO MONUMENTA Responsible: BCM, DM KN, RMBs, MB SR Cooperation: MG Limes Date: Ongoing fulfilment	Pursuant to § 12 of the Monuments Act, perform regular state heritage supervision over the construction-technical state of the national cultural monuments Gerulata and Iža as well as supervision over compliance with the principles of monument protection Responsible: RMBs Cooperation: MB SR via PRO MONUMENTA

Tasks for the years 2011 – 2021 (set in 2011 version of the Management Plan – part IV.)	Fulfilment of the tasks in the years 2011 – 2017 (state of affairs as of 16 November 2017)	Tasks for the years 2017 – 2021 (set at the MG Limes meeting on 10 November 2017 and supplemented by the MG Limes members up to 16 November 2017)
		Date: ongoing, once a month from March to October
To permanently monitor the state of preservation of the sites' authenticity and integrity and the state of presentation of walls, in the event of detection of any defect adopt efficient measures for their elimination	Ensured an adequate state of protection of all authentic presented parts of military forts. Continuation of cooperation with PRO MONUMENTA Responsible: BCM, DM KN, RMBs, MB SR	Prevention: monitoring the state of masonry conservation Technical diagnostics Regular maintenance of the monument Responsible: BCM, DM KN, RMBs, MB SR Cooperation: MB SR via PRO MONUMENTA Date: once a month from March to October
To address problems that arise at the national level through the platform of the "Inter-ministerial Commission for the World Cultural Heritage Sites"	After the inscription	After the inscription in the World Heritage List – regular participation of the MG Limes member on the Commission meetings
To ensure adequate protection of both component parts and their buffer zones – to adhere to the preservation principles	The protection of both component parts and their buffer zones is ensured in accordance with the Principles of protection for the Protected Historic Zone Rusovce and the Buffer zone for Iža Roman military fort. Responsible: BCM, DM KN, RMBs Date: ongoing	The protection of both component parts and their buffer zones is ensured in accordance with the Principles of protection for the Protected Historic Zone Rusovce and the Buffer zone for Iža Roman military fort. Responsible: BCM, DM KN, RMBs Date: ongoing
To ensure archaeological research preceding any interventions into the ground of the component parts and their buffer zones	Archaeological survey ensured in accordance with the principles of protection Responsible: BCM, DM KN, RMBs Date: ongoing	Archaeological survey ensured in accordance with the principles of protection Responsible: BCM, DM KN, RMBs Date: ongoing
Conservation and stabilization of uncovered parts of authentic walls	An adequate state of preservation ensured for authentic uncovered parts of the national cultural monuments Gerulata and Iža. Continuation of cooperation with PRO MONUMENTA Responsible: BCM, DM KN, RMBs, MB SR Date: ongoing	An adequate state of preservation ensured for authentic uncovered parts of the national cultural monuments Gerulata and Iža. Continuation of cooperation with PRO MONUMENTA Responsible: BCM, DM KN, RMBs, MB SR Date: ongoing
To ensure proper preservation of the findings, continuously after their documentation – registration and processing of collections	Conservation of all findings in the framework of processing survey documentation Responsible: BCM, DM KN Date: ongoing	Conservation of all findings in the framework of processing survey documentation Responsible: BCM, DM KN Date: ongoing Direction of the owner's activity in preparing the stabilisation, conservation and restoration of the afflicted architectural parts and elements of the national cultural monument Responsible: RMBs Date: ongoing

Tasks for the years 2011 – 2021 (set in 2011 version of the Management Plan – part IV.)	Fulfilment of the tasks in the years 2011 – 2017 (state of affairs as of 16 November 2017)	Tasks for the years 2017 – 2021 (set at the MG Limes meeting on 10 November 2017 and supplemented by the MG Limes members up to 16 November 2017)
Regular maintenance of existing information system; permanent updating	Regular updating, supplementing and upgrading of the information system Responsible: BCM, DM KN, Date: ongoing	Regular updating, supplementing and upgrading of the information system Responsible: BCM, DM KN, Date: ongoing
All construction activities on the site as well as within its buffer zone must be subject to the approval process pursuant to the valid legislation and must be in compliance with the adopted concepts Responsible: owners, self-government, MG Limes	Prepared principles of heritage protection for the Rusovce heritage zone transposed into the applicable territorial plan protected zone Iža - valid Responsible: local self-government, RMB, MB SR Date: ongoing	Monitor and ensure compliance with the principles of heritage protection and the applicable territorial plan, and principles of protection in the Iža conservation zone Responsible: RMB, local self-government Cooperation: MG Limes Date: ongoing
To secure update of the Management Plan – every five years, and partial amendments when necessary	Responsible: owners, local self-government, MG Limes Date: every 5 years	Responsible: MG Limes Date: by 2022
Bratislava-Rusovce – Gerulata, rímsky vojenský tábor (kastel)		
To limit building activities within the area of the archaeological site and buffer zone in compliance with the Preservation Principles of the Protected Historic Zone Rusovce Responsible: CB of Rusovce in cooperation with RMB BA	Fulfilled on an ongoing basis, this was reflected in the applicable territorial plan of the Protected Historic Zone Rusovce	Control check of compliance with the task Responsible: CB of Rusovce in cooperation with the RMB BA Date: ongoing
Restoration and conservation implemented on the site – renovation and conservation of walls within the framework of 5 year cycle Responsible: owner – City of Bratislava, BCM	Prevention: monitoring of the state of masonry conservation - Technical diagnostics - Regular maintenance of the monument Responsible: BCM Date: 2014 – 2017 Cooperation: MB SR via PRO MONUMENTA	Renewal of masonry conservation as necessary Responsible: BCM Date: ongoing
Iža – “Kelemantia”, rímsky vojenský tábor (kastel)		
To eliminate waterlogging and mineralization of the walls and ensuring of a whole-year-round suitable stable climate in the interior of Lapidarium – Bastion VI. in Komárno Responsible: Nitra self-governing region, DM KN	Remediation project for the lime-cement plastering of the facade of the Bastion VI building was supported by subsidy from the Ministry of Culture (€45,000)	Remediation of the plaster on the building Bastion VI Responsible: Nitra self-governing region, DM KN Date: 2021 – 22

Tasks for the years 2011 – 2021 (set in 2011 version of the Management Plan – part IV.)	Fulfilment of the tasks in the years 2011 – 2017 (state of affairs as of 16 November 2017)	Tasks for the years 2017 – 2021 (set at the MG Limes meeting on 10 November 2017 and supplemented by the MG Limes members up to 16 November 2017)
PRESERVATION OF AUTHENTIC COMPONENTS, FINDINGS AND BUILDINGS, PRESENTATION OF THE COMPONENT PARTS AND THEIR BUFFER ZONES		
short-term plan		
Project preparation necessary for improvement of the state of preservation and conservation of the site and its surroundings within the buffer zone in compliance with the valid documents (spatial plans and preservation principles)	Prepared Preservation principles for the Protected Historic Zone Rusovce and Buffer zone in Iža – transposed into the respective plans. Responsible: RMB, MB SR Date: ongoing	
Responsible: owners in cooperation with the self-government and archeologists		
medium-term plan		
Renovation and presentation of the sites divided into several phases, and creation support facilities in the buffer zone, ensuring of finances for the implementation	Ongoing fulfilment Responsible: owners in cooperation with the RMB BA and RMB NR	Ongoing fulfilment Responsible: owners in cooperation with the RMB BA and RMB NR
Responsible: owners in cooperation with RMB BA and RMB NR		
long-term plan		
Comprehensive approach to the renovation of the functional units not only in both parts of the site, but also in their buffer zones	PROGRAMME OF ECONOMIC AND SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT OF BRATISLAVA FOR 2010 – 2020 Responsible: Bratislava City Council (BCC) Date: 2010 – 2020	Ongoing fulfilment
Reconstruction of the civic infrastructure, access roads, lighting, terrain adjustments	On Gerulatská Street sewerage was installed, together with reconstruction of the water mains, and electric overhead cabling was replaced with underground cabling. Responsible: CB of Rusovce Date: 2016 According to the project documentation of the new building of the Ancient Gerulata Museum, the sewerage and water connection was made, together with placement of the electricity meter box into the fence of the museum project. Responsible: CB of Rusovce, BCM Date: 2016	Implement implementation of the new museum building, large archaeological survey on the site of the museum, completion of the reconstruction of the grounds of the Ancient Gerulata Museum Responsible: BCM, BCC Date: according to funding Implementation of public lighting on Gerulatská Street (from the church along to the Ancient Gerulata Museum) Responsible: BCC in cooperation with CB of Rusovce Bratislava Date: 2018
Securing and possible presenting of archaeological findings	Ongoing fulfilment of the task Responsible: BCM, BCC	Ongoing fulfilment of the task Responsible: BCM, BCC

Tasks for the years 2011 – 2021 (set in 2011 version of the Management Plan – part IV.)	Fulfilment of the tasks in the years 2011 – 2017 (state of affairs as of 16 November 2017)	Tasks for the years 2017 – 2021 (set at the MG Limes meeting on 10 November 2017 and supplemented by the MG Limes members up to 16 November 2017)
connected with new research and complete elimination of disturbing elements	Date: according to funding	Date: according to funding
Bratislava-Rusovce – Gerulata, rímsky vojenský tábor (kastel)		
short-term plan		
To complete archaeological research in Gerulata and permanently ensure findings	Archaeological survey in front of the Depository building, 1st stage. Source of funding: Ministry of Culture, programme “Let’s Renew Our House”	Archaeological survey in front of the Depository building, 1st stage. Source of funding: Ministry of Culture, programme “Let’s Renew Our House” and other sources
Preparation of the reconstruction of the museum building and its technological equipment including extension and improving of the quality of deposits (finances, project documentation) Responsible: City of Bratislava – BCM	Responsible: BCM Date: 2016	Responsible: BCM Date: 2018 – 2021
Project documentation of exhibition hall and depository including its technological arrangements (connection to utilities – gas, sewage, parking)	Project documentation prepared for the new building of the museum and the Depository, including technical provisions Responsible: BCM, BCC Date: 2012	“NCM Roman fort Gerulata – Implementation of project documentation in the framework of reconstructing the Ancient Gerulata Museum. Preparation of the land, single-stage project with a budget and bill of measures (solved parts: built pit, secured, clearance of buildings, felling, provisional buildings) and geodetic survey of the site”
To complete the transfer of the land on which the open depository /the lapidarium shelter/ is situated – to ensure access to the Lapidarium	Project documentation prepared in the framework of reconstruction of the grounds of the Ancient Gerulata Museum – SO 04 Removal of obsolete objects, SO 05 Provisional objects for operation of the archaeological station, building of the Depository Responsible: BCM Date: 2014	Funding source: Subsidy system “Let’s Renew our House” in the new sub-programme 1.6 Modernisation and comprehensive reconstruction of national cultural monuments with priority of conservation and reconstruction Amount: €496 658
Responsible: City of Bratislava – BCM	Lands in the direct vicinity of the BCM, workplace Ancient Gerulata Bratislava-Rusovce were entrusted into the administration of the BCM Ancient Gerulata: the protocol on the entrusting of administration of a real estate property of the City of Bratislava and related rights and obligations, no. 11 88 0386 12 00 Responsible: CB of Rusovce, BCM, BCC Date: 2015	Responsible: BCM, BCC Date: 2018 – 2021
medium-term plan		
Archaeological Research Advance archaeological research under the newly designed	Archaeological survey in front of the Depository building, 1st stage. Funding source: SR “Let’s Renew our House” Responsible: BCM	BCM requested inclusion of the clearance, provisional buildings and Depository in the Bratislava city budget for 2016 – 2018 via the Bratislava General Investor, and is applying

Tasks for the years 2011 – 2021 (set in 2011 version of the Management Plan – part IV.)	Fulfilment of the tasks in the years 2011 – 2017 (state of affairs as of 16 November 2017)	Tasks for the years 2017 – 2021 (set at the MG Limes meeting on 10 November 2017 and supplemented by the MG Limes members up to 16 November 2017)
depository in Rusovce (shelter of lapidarium on its own land) and in the location 4 and advance archaeological research under the Lapidarium Responsible: City of Bratislava – BCM Date: 2012 – 2014	Date: 2016 - Archaeological survey in the grounds of the Ancient Gerulata Museum, site 4. Responsible: BCM Date: 2017	with this same project also for financing support from the Norwegian Financing Mechanism and from the new SR Ministry of Culture programme “Let’s Renew our House”, subprogram 1.6. A part of this is the large archaeological survey in front of the new museum building. Responsible: BCC, BCM Date: 2018 – 2021
Recommendations		
To re-evaluate the possibility of extending the museum area based on the new outcomes of the archaeological research (including addressing the ownership rights towards the territory)	Lands in the direct vicinity of the museum workplace Ancient Gerulata were entrusted into the administration of the BCM – Ancient Gerulata Museum for the purpose of implementing the objectives – reconstruction of the grounds of the Ancient Gerulata Museum; the protocol on the entrusting of administration of a real estate property of the City of Bratislava and related rights and obligations, no. 11 88 0386 12 00	BCM requested inclusion of the clearance, provisional buildings and Depository in the Bratislava city budget for 2016 – 2018 via the Bratislava General Investor, and is applying with this same project also for financing support from the Norwegian Financing Mechanism and from the new SR Ministry of Culture programme “Let’s Renew our House”, subprogram 1.6. A part of this is the large archaeological survey in front of the new museum building.
Implementation of the project “Ancient Gerulata”, construction of the museum building, its technological equipment including the broadening and improving of the quality of deposits	Responsible: BCC, BCM, MC Rusovce	Responsible: BCC, BCM Date: 2018 – 2021
Adequate securing of all authentic parts of the Roman fort in the course of the reconstruction of the museum and depository		
Responsible: City of Bratislava – BCM Date: - building of new depository and reconstruction of existing structure: 2015 – 2016 - building of new exhibition hall: 2015 – 2016		
long-term plan		
After completion of the museum reconstruction, only permanent maintenance and monitoring of findings situation is anticipated, only in the event of the possible uncovering of new findings during archaeological research prior to the museum’s reconstruction is it necessary to address the current situation by designing the proposal for their stabilization, renovation and presentation		Implementation of archaeological survey in accordance with the plan – site 3
		Responsible: BCM Date: 2018 – 2021
		Construction of the new museum building, new information system, reconstruction of the whole grounds
		Conserving building density at the archaeological site, progressively attenuate the construction of family houses and create the base for the possibility of continuing archaeological surveys and possible presentation of the site

Tasks for the years 2011 – 2021 (set in 2011 version of the Management Plan – part IV.)	Fulfilment of the tasks in the years 2011 – 2017 (state of affairs as of 16 November 2017)	Tasks for the years 2017 – 2021 (set at the MG Limes meeting on 10 November 2017 and supplemented by the MG Limes members up to 16 November 2017)
<p>archaeological station for depositing findings, registration of collections, study spaces</p> <p>Broadening of the area for staff and visitors (social spaces and hygiene facilities).</p> <p>Implementation of archaeological research only in compliance with the concept (site 3)</p> <p>Within the framework of elaboration of the spatial plan of the zone Rusovce – centre, a precondition to conserve the density of houses on the archaeological site should be created, gradually restrict the building of houses and create preconditions for the possibility to continue the archaeological research and the possible presentation of the site</p>		<p>Responsible: RMB, BCC, BCM Date: according to possibilities</p>
Iža – “Kelemantia”, rímsky vojenský tábor (kastel)		
<p>short-term plan</p> <p>To prepare the renovation and presentation study of the fort based on the elaborated and approved concept, prepare necessary partial projects for individual structures</p> <p>Responsible: Nitra self-governing region – DM KN in cooperation with all owners of the NCM Date: according to the phases and timetable in the concept</p>	<p>So far there have been drawn up of the conservation and restoration projects for:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - south part of the spas building - south-east corner bastion - south-west corner bastion - north gate 	<p>Conservation and restoration of the north gate – based on the Architectonic-urbanistic Study – Concept of conservation and presentation of the NCM Roman Fort in Iža: 1st stage – west part 2018 2nd stage – east part 2019</p> <p>Conservation and restoration of the north part of the spas (2020 – 2021)</p> <p>Responsible: DM KN Date: 2018 – 2019, 2020 – 2021</p> <p>In the case of a subsidy for the restoration of the Roman fort in Iža, the Nitra self-governing region will ensure co-financing for the project</p> <p>Responsible: Nitra self-governing region Date: 2018 – 2020 /21</p>
<p>medium-term plan</p> <p>Archaeological Research – Recommendations</p> <p>Possible implementation of archaeological research only in compliance with the Concept</p> <p>It is recommended to carry out geophysical survey in the buffer zone of the monument</p>	<p>2011, 2014 Archaeological survey of the south part of the spas buildings</p> <p>In 2016 a further 5 temporary Roman camps were found in archive aerial shots, also in the buffer zone east of the fort. In the same year geophysical measurements were taken here, which, though, did not yield the expected results. The location of the camps was verified by testing survey (probes).</p>	<p>Complete the archaeological survey of the uncovered part of the spas building</p> <p>Responsible: DM KN Date: 2019 – 2020</p> <p>For survey and identifying the situation of the temporary Roman camps, use also other prospecting methods, e.g. boreholes with trench filling, or other probes</p>

Tasks for the years 2011 – 2021 (set in 2011 version of the Management Plan – part IV.)	Fulfilment of the tasks in the years 2011 – 2017 (state of affairs as of 16 November 2017)	Tasks for the years 2017 – 2021 (set at the MG Limes meeting on 10 November 2017 and supplemented by the MG Limes members up to 16 November 2017)
<p>Implementation of the Concept for Conservation and Presentation of the NCM Roman Fort in Iža</p> <p>Gradual implementation of the final presentation concept of the in situ fort (including adequate safeguarding of the authentic parts) within the framework of which measures for the following problems will be adopted:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - for the preservation of the status of the authentic walls – ones situated under the terrain surface - for protection from surface water – draining of sudden rain water and preventing waterlogging of the terrain <p>Responsible: Nitra self-governing region – DM KN in cooperation with all owners of the NCM Date: according to the phases and timetable in the Concept</p>	<p>Progressive implementation</p> <p>Responsible: Nitra self-governing region – DM KN in cooperation with all NCM owners Date: according to phasing and the timetable in the concept plan</p>	<p>Progressive implementation</p> <p>Responsible: Nitra self-governing region – DM KN in cooperation with all NCM owners Date: according to phasing and the timetable in the concept plan</p> <p>Terrain adjustments of the presented parts of masonry in order to drain off rainwater – spas, north-west tower, north gate</p> <p>Responsible: DM KN Date: 2018-2021</p>
<p>Modernizing of the camera surveillance system in the main building of the Danube Museum in Komárno, where the findings /collections from the fort in Iža are deposited</p> <p>Responsible: Nitra self-governing region – DM KN</p>	<p>In 2014 an implementation project was drawn up for modernisation of the main museum building, including a security system</p>	<p>Construction of the new security system in the building</p> <p>Responsible: DM KN Date: 2018</p>
<p>Buffer Zone</p> <p>Re-location of the shooting range, landscaping of the fort's surroundings (vegetation)</p> <p>Responsible: owners, local self-government in Iža in cooperation with the MG Limes</p>	<p>Proceedings for removing the structure have begun (12/10/2017)</p>	<p>Removal of the structure</p> <p>Responsible: local self-government Cooperation: MG Limes Date: 2018</p>
<p>Research in the buffer zone</p>	<p>Updating and a new delimitation of the buffer zone</p> <p>In connection with the finding of another 5 temporary Roman camps on aerial photos in the buffer zone east of the fort, in 2017 there were conducted geophysical measurements (which not yield the expected results). The location of the camps was verified by testing survey (probes)</p>	<p>Ensure and monitor compliance with the set conditions for the regime of activities in the NCM buffer zone, in cooperation with state administration and local self-government institutions.</p> <p>Survey in the buffer zone – always prior to any building activity or intervention in the terrain</p>

Tasks for the years 2011 – 2021 (set in 2011 version of the Management Plan – part IV.)	Fulfilment of the tasks in the years 2011 – 2017 (state of affairs as of 16 November 2017)	Tasks for the years 2017 – 2021 (set at the MG Limes meeting on 10 November 2017 and supplemented by the MG Limes members up to 16 November 2017)
long-term plan		
Completion of the implementation of the Concept for renovation and presentation of the NCM Roman fort in Iža	2010 – 2017 Mechanical weeding where appropriate also chemical, manual mowing	According to possibilities, continue in implementing the Concept by uncovering and conserving adjacent buildings in the south part of the fort
Maintenance of the entire area of the fort and its surroundings, permanent care (pursuant to maintenance manual, within the framework of the Concept), elimination of the wall damages, elimination of the intrusive vegetation from presented walls, maintenance of the grass area	Responsible: owners, archaeologists in cooperation with the self-government	Permanent maintenance of the monument grounds (weeding, mowing)
Securing of possible findings resulting from implementation of the overall conservation and presentation of the fort (pursuant to the Concept), their suitable presentation in situ or in the museum		Regular monitoring and remediation of damage to the masonry of the presented architectural parts
Responsible: owners, archaeologists in cooperation with the self-government		Responsible: DM KN in cooperation with local self-government Date: permanent task
IN THE AREA OF SITE MANAGEMENT		
short-term plan		
Participation in the spatial planning process of project documentation Preparation with the aim to achieve maximum respect for the needs of the sites and their buffer zones preservation	Spatial plan of the zone Rusovce – centre prepared and adopted	The Strategy of Preservation of the Monuments Fund of the Slovak Republic 2017–2022: put for interdepartmental commentary process in September, adopted by the Government of the Slovak Republic on 13 December 2017.
Incorporate the tasks from the Management Plan into all prepared conceptual and strategic documents which are currently in the process of preparation	Responsible: CB of Rusovce Date: 2015	
Responsible: MG Limes in cooperation with the Commission for the coordination of the tasks for the World Cultural Heritage sites preservation		
Local level – within the framework of improving the quality and simplifying the management system it is necessary to settle the ownership relations to the territory of the fort in Iža so that the entire territory of the fort is in the ownership or administration	In 2009 – 2017 several negotiations were held between national cultural monument owners regarding the settlement of ownership rights to the fort's territory.	Conclude the purchase contract and subsequently ensure entry in the cadastral land register, after the purchase contracts have been signed
	In 2017 the Nitra self-governing region has been preparing a purchase contract for buying up lands from the Slovak	Responsible: Nitra self-government region Cooperation: support from the City of Bratislava Date: 2018

Tasks for the years 2011 – 2021 (set in 2011 version of the Management Plan – part IV.)	Fulfilment of the tasks in the years 2011 – 2017 (state of affairs as of 16 November 2017)	Tasks for the years 2017 – 2021 (set at the MG Limes meeting on 10 November 2017 and supplemented by the MG Limes members up to 16 November 2017)
<p>of 1 owner or administrator; 1 owner is more suitable even when applying for finances from grant/subsidy schemes</p> <p>Responsible: current owners in cooperation with the Ministry of Culture which took the initiative to coordinate the procedure</p>	<p>Water Management Authority and the Archaeological Institute of the Slovak Academy of Sciences in Nitra.</p>	
<p>medium-term plan To complete and to adopt the binding section of the spatial plan for the zone Rusovce – centre</p>	<p>Fulfilled</p>	
<p>Responsible: CB of Rusovce</p> <p>long-term plan To pay special attention to the planned reconstruction of the Komárno – Štúrovo segment of the road I/63 to the requested category of the 1st class (C11, 5/80) which is planned in the southern section of the Municipality of Iža in the fort's buffer zone, and closer proximity to the Roman fort</p> <p>Risks: - visual (proximity of the road) - environmental pollution (growth of transportation) - level of noise</p> <p>Responsible: local self-government in Iža, Nitra self-governing region in cooperation with the MG Limes</p>		<p>Nitra self-governing region will ensure discussion about possibilities for including the requirement in the plan for the construction and reconstruction of roads in this locality, via support from the Transport Department of the Office of the Nitra self-governing region</p> <p>Responsible: Nitra self-governing region Date: 2020</p>
IN THE AREA OF SOURCES AND LEVELS OF FINANCE		
<p>short-term plan Ensuring finances for the reconstruction of the Ancient Gerulata Museum and its technological equipment Responsible: City of Bratislava – BCM</p>	<p>Ongoing fulfilment</p>	<p>Plan to use: - Norwegian funds - subsidy system "Let's Renew Our House", sub-programme 1.6, project</p> <p>Responsible: City of Bratislava – BCM</p>
<p>To ensure finances for the preparation and project documentation for the visitors facilities, in connection with the Concept for the Conservation and Presentation of the NCM Roman Fort in Iža</p> <p>Responsible: Municipality of Iža and the owners of the NCM</p>	<p>The Danube Museum in Komárno has not yet commenced the construction of special facilities for visitors to the fort, but is using the newly-created museum in the village of Iža.</p>	<p>According to financial possibilities</p>

Tasks for the years 2011 – 2021 (set in 2011 version of the Management Plan – part IV.)	Fulfilment of the tasks in the years 2011 – 2017 (state of affairs as of 16 November 2017)	Tasks for the years 2017 – 2021 (set at the MG Limes meeting on 10 November 2017 and supplemented by the MG Limes members up to 16 November 2017)
and land in the buffer zone in cooperation with the MG Limes Date: 2012		
medium-term plan		
To ensure finances for building of the visitors facilities, in connection with the Concept for the Conservation and Presentation of the NCM Roman Fort in Iža	Facilities were built by the Municipality of Iža – the Roman and Ethnographic Museum Kelemantia in Iža Shooting range – currently in the process of relocation	Relocation of the shooting range Responsible: Municipality of Iža, owners in cooperation with MG Limes Date: 2018
To financially ensure the re-location of the shooting range away from the immediate vicinity of the fort in Iža	Responsible: Municipality of Iža	
Responsible: Municipality of Iža, owners in cooperation with the MG Limes		
To increase permanent funds for presentation and maintenance of the Roman fort's area in Iža by increasing the budget for the Danube Museum in Komárno	2015: for mowing €3 000 2016: for mowing €5 000 2017: for mowing €5 000	Nitra self-governing region will increase the 2018 budget for the DM KN for maintenance of the fort's grounds by €1000, i.e. the museum will receive €6000 in total
Responsible: Nitra self-governing region as the owner of the NCM, based on the proposed budget for the Danube Museum in Komárno (DM KN)	Responsible: Nitra self-governing region as the owner of the NCM, on the basis of proposed budget for the DM KN Responsible: Nitra self-governing region Date: 2018	
long-term plan		
To ensure finances for permanent maintenance of the site as well as human resources for its professional operation		Ancient Gerulata Museum: Ensure funds for professional and support staff, in total 8 – 10 employees (an expert, technician, restorer, cash-desk worker, lecturer, guardians, gardener, serviceman)
Responsible: owners in cooperation with the MG Limes		
Responsible: BCC, BCM Date: after completion of the reconstruction		
IN THE AREA OF EDUCATION, PROMOTION, PUBLICATION ACTIVITIES AND EXPERT RESOURCES		
Education		
short-term plan		
In Bratislava - Rusovce use all means of education and promotion to achieve understanding of site management with the owners in the territory of the fort and in the buffer zone	Several times – discussion with owners, spatial plan for the zone – commented by citizens, transparent process Responsible: local self-government in cooperation with MG Limes	Article in all issues of the Rusovce Newspaper, articles in nationwide media Responsible: local self-government in cooperation with MG Limes Date: permanent
Responsible: self-government in cooperation with the MG Limes		
medium-term and long-term plan		
To continually focus education on all age categories and	Gerulata:	Article in all issues of the Rusovce Newspaper.

Tasks for the years 2011 – 2021 (set in 2011 version of the Management Plan – part IV.)	Fulfilment of the tasks in the years 2011 – 2017 (state of affairs as of 16 November 2017)	Tasks for the years 2017 – 2021 (set at the MG Limes meeting on 10 November 2017 and supplemented by the MG Limes members up to 16 November 2017)
<p>social groups with the aim to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - increase awareness and knowledge at the local and national levels - improve forms of promotion and education for visitors (organized, individual, families, group visitors) - prepare education programmes - involve schools in the system of education (e.g. UNESCO Associated Schools Project) - involve the sites in cultural and social programmes - organize workshops and conferences <p>To broaden education in mutual cooperation of sites, also within the international framework of countries situated on the frontiers of the Roman Empire (trans-boundary cooperation, cooperation of the sites on the UNESCO WH List) to the widest possible extent</p> <p>Responsible: MG Limes</p>	<p>University library in Bratislava – UNESCO information and documentation centre, meeting of UNESCO Associated Schools in the Slovak republic, lecturer: Jaroslava Schmidtová Date: 30/11/2015, 02/12/2015</p> <p>“Most interesting event of the school library for the international day of school libraries” – the Rusovce elementary school participated in the nationwide project in the purview of the Minister of Education, Science, Research & Sport of the Slovak Republic, Juraj Draxler – project evaluation by Jaroslava Schmidtová Responsible: CB of Rusovce, BCM Date: 26/10/2015</p> <p>“Petržalka super school” project organised by Department of Schools & Sport, Municipal Office of Bratislava-Petržalka, lecturer: Jaroslava Schmidtová Responsible: BCM Cooperation: MG Limes Date: 31/05/2017</p>	<p>Regularly organised events:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> -Bratislava Day, every year in April -Museums Day, every year in May -Roman Games and Limes Day, every year in September -International Archaeology Day, every year in October <p>Responsible: BCC – BCM Date: yearly</p> <p>Preparation of the project “Roman virtual circle” in the framework of the Interreg cooperation programme Slovakia – Austria, Partners: AVI studio s.r.o., Carnuntum Archaeological Park</p> <p>Responsible: BCM Cooperation: MG Limes Date: 2018 – 2020</p>
Promotion and Publication Activities		
short-term plan		
<p>To ensure internet connection for the Ancient Gerulata Museum</p> <p>Responsible: City of Bratislava – BCM Date: 2012</p>	<p>Fulfilled</p> <p>Responsible: BCM, BCC Date: 2012</p>	
<p>To change the name of the public transportation bus-stop from “Roman Park” to “Gerulata”</p> <p>Responsible: CB of Rusovce Date: the end of 2012</p>	<p>Fulfilled</p> <p>Responsible: CB of Rusovce Date: 2012</p>	
<p>To continue publishing flyers for citizens informing about new street names inspired by Gerulata</p> <p>Responsible: CB of Rusovce Date: the end of 2011</p>	<p>Ongoing fulfilment</p> <p>Responsible: CB of Rusovce Date: ongoing</p>	<p>Ongoing fulfilment</p> <p>Responsible: CB of Rusovce Date: ongoing</p>
<p>To organize another meeting with the citizens of the city borough regarding the inscription of Gerulata on the WH List</p> <p>Responsible: CB of Rusovce</p>	<p>3 meetings organised, citizens are informed also through mass media.</p> <p>Responsible: CB of Rusovce Date: 2011, 2012, 2013</p>	

Tasks for the years 2011 – 2021 (set in 2011 version of the Management Plan – part IV.)	Fulfilment of the tasks in the years 2011 – 2017 (state of affairs as of 16 November 2017)	Tasks for the years 2017 – 2021 (set at the MG Limes meeting on 10 November 2017 and supplemented by the MG Limes members up to 16 November 2017)
Date: the end of 2011		
To open the treasury in the Ancient Gerulata Museum – Lapidarium to the general public Responsible: BCC – BCM Date: autumn 2011	Made accessible Exhibitions: Danube Limes in Slovakia. Ancient Roman Monuments on the Middle Danube. Ivan Gašparovič, the president of the Slovak republic, participated at the opening Exhibition of designs from the architectonic competition for the museum building renovation Jewels from graves in the burial site III. Vernissage: 26/09/2017 Brochures published: Jaroslava Schmidtová – Oľga Gáfriková – Ľubica Pinčíková: Danube Limes in Slovakia. Ancient Roman Monuments on the Middle Danube. Roman military fort Gerulata in Bratislava – Rusovce Jaroslava Schmidtová “Ancient Gerulata”. Bratislava 2015, Slovak/English-language brochure Jaroslava Schmidtová: Rusovce: Roman military fort Gerulata Responsible: BCM, CB of Rusovce, MB SR	Continue to present research results in the form of published articles, lectures, exhibitions etc. Responsible: BCC – BCM
To complete construction of the Roman and Ethnographic Museum in Iža Responsible: Municipality of Iža within the framework of the project of transboundary cooperation Date: 2012	Roman and Ethnographic Museum Kelemantia – completed and commissioned into operation on 13/08/2013 decision no. 46888/SÚ/2013-PT-3	
To prepare the publication “Po stopách Rimanov na Dunaji” (Following Traces of the Romans on the Danube) in 4 languages Responsible: Municipality of Iža Date: 2012	Tourist guide – Following Traces of the Romans on the Danube, project HUSK/0901/1.3.1/0256 in the languages: Slovak, Hungarian, English, German, published in 2013 The publication Traditional recipes of the municipalities Iža and Almásfüzitő, in Slovak and Hungarian languages, published in 2013	Create a digital form and mobile application guide for the Roman fort and guide through the exhibition of the Roman and Ethnographic Museum Responsible: Iža municipality, DM KN Date: 2018 – 2019
To prepare catalogue no. V and VI Roman Lamps in the Museum	Iža: Catalogues of Roman Collections no. V and VI were published in 2012	Continue in publishing catalogues of the Danube Museum’s Roman collections no. VII year 2019

Tasks for the years 2011 – 2021 (set in 2011 version of the Management Plan – part IV.)	Fulfilment of the tasks in the years 2011 – 2017 (state of affairs as of 16 November 2017)	Tasks for the years 2017 – 2021 (set at the MG Limes meeting on 10 November 2017 and supplemented by the MG Limes members up to 16 November 2017)
Collections and Roman Bone Items in the Museum Collections — in Slovak, summary in German and Hungarian Responsible: Danube Museum in Komárno in cooperation with the University of Trnava Date: 2011	Rusovce: The Lamps. Roman Lamps in Provincial Context” by Róbert Frecer Date: 18/09/2016	no. VIII year 2020-21
<i>Recommendation:</i> Publication M. Musilová/ V. Turčan, Rímske pamiatky na strednom Dunaji (Roman Monuments on the Middle Danube) – publish also in English Responsible: the publisher in cooperation with the MG Limes Date: 2012	In 2011 the guide by M. Musilová/V. Turčan, Roman Monuments on the Middle Danube from Vindobona to Aquincum was published in English and Hungarian (with financial support from the Ministry of Culture and Visegrad Fund), published by the Foundation for rescuing cultural heritage In 2012 the same guide was published in German. In the framework of the EU project Danube Limes Brand 2012 – 2014 the City Institute for Heritage Conservation cooperated on the publication Frontiers of the Roman empire. 2013, ed. S.Jílek/M. Musilová/J. Rajtár. This publication presents also the sites Rusovce – Gerulata and Iža – Kelemantia B. Lesák/M. Musilová/B. Resutík, Bratislava Castle – The First Roman Monumental Architecture from the 1st Century BC. In: Frontiers of the Roman empire. 2013, ed. S.Jílek/M. Musilová/J. Rajtár, pages 48 – 69 The City Institute for Heritage Conservation organised two conferences in 2013 and 2014, it initiated and brought into being the international event Danube Limes Day. Since 2014 the event has regularly been organised between Rusovce-Gerulata in Slovakia and the Carnuntum in Austria, every year in September, since 2015 in cooperation with BCM. In 2017 the event was expanded also to include cooperation with the Lower-Austria Government – Austrian citizens were offered free transport to Gerulata via the Archaeological Park in Carnuntum. The event is planned as a long-term event for supporting archaeological tourism in the region.	Organise an international exhibition at the Mercati di Traiano in Rome, entitled Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes –in the period June – December 2018 in order to support the World Heritage nomination Responsible: (Bratislava) City Institute for Heritage Conservation Date: 2018 Summer solstice on the Danube, organised by the Middle Danube Foundation – the Danube fund. Attempt to participate with Roman monuments and to promote them also at this event. Responsible: (Bratislava) City Institute for Heritage Conservation Date: according to possibilities

Tasks for the years 2011 – 2021 (set in 2011 version of the Management Plan – part IV.)	Fulfilment of the tasks in the years 2011 – 2017 (state of affairs as of 16 November 2017)	Tasks for the years 2017 – 2021 (set at the MG Limes meeting on 10 November 2017 and supplemented by the MG Limes members up to 16 November 2017)
CDs with Limes Day 2014 were also issued; the video is published also on YouTube Limes Day 2014		
medium-term plan In connection with building and establishing of the prepared Roman and Ethnographic Museum in the Municipality of Iža – location and presentation of selected Roman findings from Iža in its expositions Responsible: Municipality of Iža in cooperation with the Archaeological Institute of the Slovak Academy of Sciences (AI SAS) and the Danube Museum in Komárno (DM KN) Date: 2012	Archaeological and ethnographic collections prepared on the basis of a loan contract with the Archaeological Institute of the AI SAS and the DM KN, several findings were located and presented in the exposition of the Roman and Ethnographic Museum Kelemantia The Municipality of Iža was successful with the project Limes Romanus Knocking on UNESCO’s Door in the framework of a call under HU-SK Interreg V A, under which the construction of the rear part of the museum is prepared (the depositary, craft workshops, conference hall, facilities). The project also includes the realisation of two sightseeing towers, which should be positioned at entrance points to the municipality. The construction should begin in the second half of 2018	In the new permanent exhibition of the DM KN in a separate hall, the findings from the Kelemantia and Brigetio Roman forts will be presented Responsible: DM KN Date: 2018 – 2019 Implementation of the project Limes Romanus Knocking on UNESCO’s Door - a digital guide with a mobile application for the museum in Iža - new “screenplay” for the museum in Iža - barrier-free access to the museum in Iža Responsible: Municipality of Iža Date: 2018 – 2020
To prepare a new exposition and information system in the reconstructed Ancient Gerulata Museum in Rusovce Responsible: BCC – BCM Date: 2015	New exhibition and information system at the Ancient Gerulata Museum Responsible: BCC – BCM Date: following the completion of building works	
long-term plan To update the presentation and publication activities plan of both sites; to use all possibilities for promotion and advertising in regional and national media Responsible: BCC – BCM, DM KN, MG Limes in cooperation with the Commission for the coordination of the tasks of the WCH preservation	Specific plan of presentation and publication activities for the sites is not applied yet. The members of MG Limes provide information according to requests from the media. Responsible: MG Limes Date: ongoing	Task: draw up a common plan of presentation and publication activities for both sites, and also separate ones for each site Cooperation with the Rusovce newspaper, nationwide newspapers, Slovak state radio and TV, and other media Responsible: MG Limes Date: permanent
Expert Resources		
short-term plan To ensure at least 2 expert workers for the new museum exposition in Iža It is necessary to ensure 1 permanent position	Iža: In 2015 one expert worker was recruited to a half-time position and one person was contracted for guiding visitors Responsible: Municipality of Iža	According to financial possibilities, the BCM will ensure the full-time positions of the restorer and expert worker Responsible: BCM Date: according to financial possibilities

Tasks for the years 2011 – 2021 (set in 2011 version of the Management Plan – part IV.)	Fulfilment of the tasks in the years 2011 – 2017 (state of affairs as of 16 November 2017)	Tasks for the years 2017 – 2021 (set at the MG Limes meeting on 10 November 2017 and supplemented by the MG Limes members up to 16 November 2017)
of restorer for regular treatment of Gerulata archaeological collections in Rusovce Responsible: Municipality of Iža, BCC – BCM Date: 2012	Date: 2015 Rusovce: In 2017 one restorer was recruited to a half-time position for regular treatment of archaeological collections, and an expert worker was recruited to a half-time position in the Ancient Gerulata Museum Responsible: BCM Date: 2017	
medium-term plan To prepare proposal for human resources and their ensuring in connection with the extension of the Ancient Gerulata Museum (expert, service and other staff) Responsible: BCC – BCM Date: 2015	The proposal for human resources is stated in project documentation in the framework of the reconstruction of the Ancient Gerulata Museum 2012 – following construction of the new museum building, 6 – 8 persons Responsible: BCC, BCM Date: following completion of the museum reconstruction	Ensuring human resources for Gerulata following construction of the new museum building, 6 – 8 persons Responsible: BCC, BCM Date: following completion of the museum reconstruction
long-term plan Improvement of quality and professional training, stabilizing of expert workers operating on the sites Responsible: City of Bratislava, Municipality of Iža	Ongoing fulfilment Responsible: BCC Organising summer camps at the Roman and Ethnographic Museum Kelemantia (3 – 5 day turns) Responsible: Municipality of Iža Date: 2015, 2016, 2017	Improve the quality of expert education, stabilise expert staff operating on the sites Responsible: BCC Date: ongoing Organising educational programmes in the form of summer camps Responsible: Municipality of Iža Date: 2018 – 2021
IN THE AREA OF SUSTAINABLE TOURISM		
short-term plan To complete the project of the comprehensive information system within the Bratislava self-governing region Responsible: Bratislava self-governing region, BCC – BCM, CB of Rusovce	Fulfilled Comprehensive information system established, direction boards placed on the Berg – Rajka motorway and on 1-class roads in the surroundings of Rusovce Responsible: Ministry of Culture, Bratislava self-governing region, CB of Rusovce Date: 2016	-
To complete the project of the comprehensive information system within the Nitra self-governing region, which will interconnect the Roman fort with Iža village and with the town of Komárno (museum expositions),	In the Iža village, by the side of the I/63 road and by the side of the local road to the Danube, there were placed permanent traffic signs IS 23b with the text “Dievčí hrad” (Maiden Castle) and a logo, and signs IS 23b with the text “Rímsky tabor” (Roman fort) and a logo	Completion or preparation of the information system within the Nitra self-governing region, linking the Roman fort, the museum and the Roman lapidary in Komárno will be discussed with the Tourism Department of the Nitra self-governing region Office

Tasks for the years 2011 – 2021 (set in 2011 version of the Management Plan – part IV.)	Fulfilment of the tasks in the years 2011 – 2017 (state of affairs as of 16 November 2017)	Tasks for the years 2017 – 2021 (set at the MG Limes meeting on 10 November 2017 and supplemented by the MG Limes members up to 16 November 2017)
<p>and will ensure signposting for access to the fort at all access routes</p> <p>Responsible: Nitra self-governing region, Municipality of Iža, MG Limes</p>	<p>– within the construction project of the investor Nitra self-governing region – entitled Signage of cultural and tourist destinations in the Nitra region</p> <p>Responsible: Nitra self-governing region as the NCM owner</p>	<p>Responsible: Nitra self-governing region Date: 2018 – 2020</p> <p>Exchange the existing information board on the cycle route by the stop for the Kelemantia fort in Iža for a multi-language board</p> <p>Responsible: Municipality of Iža Cooperation: MG Limes Date: 2018</p>
medium-term plan		
<p>Implementation of the comprehensive information system within the Bratislava self-governing region</p> <p>To complete the project of the comprehensive information system within the wider territory of Bratislava – on the highways and border crossings, at entries to Bratislava, at main junctions and on the Panónska road, in cooperation with the Department of Transportation of the City Council of Bratislava and the Slovak Roads Administration</p> <p>Responsible: Bratislava self-governing region, BCC, CB of Rusovce</p>	<p>Comprehensive information system established within the Bratislava self-governing region, direction boards placed on the Berg – Rajka motorway and on 1-class roads in the surroundings of Rusovce</p> <p>Responsible: Ministry of Culture, Bratislava self-governing region, CB of Rusovce Date: 2016</p>	<p>Preparation of the project “Roman virtual circle” within the cooperation programme Interreg Slovakia – Austria. One of the points placed on the embankment directs visitors to the Ancient Gerulata. Presentation of the site using the latest technologies Partners: AVI studio s.r.o., Carnuntum Archaeological Park</p> <p>Responsible: BCM Date: 2018 – 2020</p>
<p>To implement the project of complementing the site information system of the Roman fort in Iža, including ensuring the basic facilities for visitors, project documentation of the site presentation in situ (multimedia and multilingual information system)</p> <p>Responsible: Nitra self-governing region, Municipality of Iža, MG Limes</p>	<p>3 information direction boards placed on the embankment by the cycle route</p> <p>Responsible: Municipality of Iža Date: 2017</p>	<p>Implementation of the project will be possible after the construction of facilities for visitors, the information system will be supplemented on an ongoing basis</p> <p>Responsible: Nitra self-governing region Date: 2020</p>
<p>Promotion of the site via digital and multimedia systems (visual presentation, photography, film), possibility of multilingual presentation with individual selection of extent of information</p> <p>To develop guiding services (audio-guides, guiding texts in foreign languages)</p>	<p>At the Ancient Gerulata Museum and the Danube Museum in Komárno are shown various films concerning the Frontiers of the Roman Empire – the Danube Limes, life on the frontier and the Roman period generally</p> <p>Lecturers working here give professional presentations in Slovak, English, Russian and Hungarian</p> <p>Responsible: BCM, DM KN</p>	<p>Preparation of the project “Roman virtual circle” in the framework of the cooperation programme Interreg Slovakia – Austria. Partners: AVI studio s.r.o., Carnuntum archaeological Park. Purchase of new equipment and screen presentation of the fort’s digitisation outcomes (burial site, fort architecture)</p> <p>Responsible: BCM Date: 2018 – 2020</p>

Tasks for the years 2011 – 2021 (set in 2011 version of the Management Plan – part IV.)	Fulfilment of the tasks in the years 2011 – 2017 (state of affairs as of 16 November 2017)	Tasks for the years 2017 – 2021 (set at the MG Limes meeting on 10 November 2017 and supplemented by the MG Limes members up to 16 November 2017)
Responsible: site administrators together with the MG Limes	Date: permanent	
long-term plan		
Incorporation of the sites in didactic and tourist routes (cultural and natural)	Eurovelo 6 cycle route, section Komárno – Kravany has significantly increased the number of visitors to Kelemantia	Implementation of the project of linking the cycle route via the section Kravany nad Dunajom – Štúrovo Responsible: Municipality of Iža Date: 2018 – 2021
Preparation of the project “Roman Route” for connecting both sites + other Roman monuments in Slovakia (cyclist routes, hiking trails, motor-roads, water roads) its interconnection to other sites within the Danube Limes and the Frontiers of the Roman Empire WHS (to already existing Roman routes of other European countries)		Revitalisation of the bus turning point Responsible: CB of Rusovce Date: 2018 – 2019
Indicating both sites in tourist guidebooks, maps, GPS navigation systems, multimedia information systems		Building a cycle route in the section from Kováčsová Street through to the street Pri gaštanovej aleji Responsible: CB of Rusovce Date: 2018 – 2019
Promotion via tourist information agencies (BIS, Komárno, www.slovakia.travel.sk), possibility of seasonal information agencies (also in association – museum expositions, municipal public transportation bus-stops, railway, airports)		Building a cycle path – linking the street Pri Gaštanovej with the cycle route Eurovelo 6 Responsible: CB of Rusovce Date: 2018 – 2019
Activities in cooperation with domestic and foreign travel agencies, participation in international tourism fairs as part of national presentation of the Slovak Republic, activities of embassies		Building the cycle route Rusovce – Jarovce Responsible: CB of Rusovce Date: 2020 – 2021
Responsible: MG Limes		
Implement or complete the information of the Danube Museum in Komárno – Roman Lapidarium, exposition of the György Klapka Museum in Komárom and lapidarium of the Regional Museum of Domokos Kuny in Tata, new museum in Iža and the Roman fort in Iža – physically and through the information navigation system	The Roman fort’s information system was upgraded in 2015	Create an information board for the Roman Lapidary of the DM KN Responsible: Nitra self-governing region – DM KN Date: 2018
Responsible: the Danube Museum in Komárno with its project partners		Promote the Roman fort in Iža on the website of the Nitra self-governing region and of the museum Responsible: Nitra self-governing region, DM KN Date: from 2018 regularly

Tasks for the years 2011 – 2021 (set in 2011 version of the Management Plan – part IV.)	Fulfilment of the tasks in the years 2011 – 2017 (state of affairs as of 16 November 2017)	Tasks for the years 2017 – 2021 (set at the MG Limes meeting on 10 November 2017 and supplemented by the MG Limes members up to 16 November 2017)
		The drawing up and ascertaining the conditions for implementation of an information system with the stated scope, and link also to museums in Hungary will be discussed with the Tourism Department of the Nitra self-governing region Office. Responsible: Nitra self-governing region Date: 2018 – 2020
WIDER POTENTIAL OF TERRITORY (IN ADDITION TO SITE VALUES) FOR USE IN SUSTAINABLE TOURISM		
short-term plan		
<p>To elaborate preparation and project documentation of the Visitors facilities in connection with the Concept for the Conservation and Presentation of the NCM Roman fort in Iža, spatial plan, in its interconnection to the Municipality of Iža and address the following issues:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - re-location of the shooting range away from the immediate vicinity of the fort, - adjustment of the fort's surroundings terrain and existing vegetation, - interconnecting the fort with the new museum building, - building of facilities for the fort (toilets, parking lot, information, refreshments, port pontoon) on the tourist route on the embankment along the Danube River <p>Responsible: Municipality of Iža and owners of the land in cooperation with the MG Limes Date: 2012</p>	<p>In 2011 on cadastral plot no.6019 in the cadastral territory of Iža there were placed mobile facilities for receiving visitors, comprising social facilities (WC, showers) and an information booth</p> <p>The municipality is the owner of floating facilities, registration no. SK-4-34043 (moored pontoon), which is tied up at river km 1760.30 on the Danube and serves for mooring small vessels</p> <p>The Municipality of Iža ensures the accessibility of the local road – a panel concrete road leading from the municipality to the Roman fort</p>	<p>The Iža municipality ensures the accessibility of the local road – a panel concrete road leading from the municipality to the Roman fort.</p> <p>Responsible: Municipality of Iža Date: ongoing</p>
medium-term plan		
<p>Repair of the access road to the Ancient Gerulata Museum in Bratislava - Rusovce which will serve for access of pedestrian Visitors</p> <p>Continuing adjustments to the main parking lot at Balkánska street (present parking lot in front of the department store Jednota) with relevant traffic signs and with signs directing the pedestrians to the Ancient Gerulata Museum, i.e. to establish information point in the Rusovce square</p>	<p>On the access road there has been laid sewerage, water mains piping, overhead electric cabling has been laid in the ground, and the road has been resurfaced</p> <p>Retaining car park surfaced using European funds</p> <p>Responsible: CB of Rusovce Date: 2014, 2016</p>	

Tasks for the years 2011 – 2021 (set in 2011 version of the Management Plan – part IV.)	Fulfilment of the tasks in the years 2011 – 2017 (state of affairs as of 16 November 2017)	Tasks for the years 2017 – 2021 (set at the MG Limes meeting on 10 November 2017 and supplemented by the MG Limes members up to 16 November 2017)
Responsible: CB of Rusovce Date: 2013 (depending on the implementation of the sewage system in Maďarská street and Gerulatská street which must precede it)		
Implementation of the project of building the area for visitors to the military fort in Iža: - landscaping of the fort surroundings, - interconnection with the municipality, - building of facilities (toilets, parking lot, port pontoon, bicycle rental place)	Since 2014 a cycle route has been built along the top of the anti-flood embankment in the section Komárno – Kravany nad Dunajom.	Extension of the cycle route for the purpose of connecting the Bokroš guesthouse to the cycle route Komárno – Kravany nad Dunajom Responsible: Municipality of Iža Date: 2018
Existing cyclist route situated on the embankment near the fort in Iža will be connected to the Patinská route, to ensure adequate information signs		
Responsible: Municipality of Iža, owners of the land in cooperation with the MG Limes		
long-term plan Concept of recreational cruise on the Danube – creation of a joint product and experience tourism	Permanent task	Permanent task Responsible: members of MG Limes in cooperation with the Commission for Coordination of Tasks in the Protection of World Cultural Heritage
Interconnection of the site to the international network Frontiers of the Roman Empire (other WH sites): - management system - information system - education and promotion - joint tourist and cultural events		Preparation of the project “Roman virtual circle” in the framework of the cooperation programme Interreg Slovakia – Austria. Partners: AVI studio s.r.o., Carnuntum Archaeological Park. One of the points located on the embankment.
Use of the potential of inter-connecting the forts with already existing trails on the Danube embankment, forest park and manor-house in Rusovce, use of the Danube and Danube alluvial plains as a family recreation area for the City of Bratislava		Responsible: BCM Date: 2018 – 2020
Responsible: members of the MG Limes in cooperation with the Commission for the coordination of tasks of the WCH preservation		

Tasks for the years 2011 – 2021 (set in 2011 version of the Management Plan – part IV.)	Fulfilment of the tasks in the years 2011 – 2017 (state of affairs as of 16 November 2017)	Tasks for the years 2017 – 2021 (set at the MG Limes meeting on 10 November 2017 and supplemented by the MG Limes members up to 16 November 2017)
IN THE AREA OF MONITORING OF THE SITES' STATE OF PRESERVATION		
Permanent monitoring and proper preventive measures in the event of the identifying of any potential threats to authentic parts and site integrity	Permanent monitoring of the state of site conservation and appropriate preventive measures in the case of any indication of a potential threat to authentic parts and site integrity	Ensuring permanent site conservation, regular monitoring with a view to averting possible risks to authentic parts and site integrity.
Upon inscription of the site, to implement monitoring of the WCH according to the WCH monitoring methodology and approved monitoring indicators for these sites	Responsible: MG Limes Date: permanent task	Responsible: MB SR Cooperation: by means of competences of all members of MG Limes Date: permanent task
To regularly evaluate the state of the air and to adopt measures in order to reduce the effect of acid rains on findings preserved on the sites		Ensuring permanent protection of the area, regular monitoring with a view to averting possible risks
Monitoring of the state of the embankments within the framework of flood protection of water bodies (Váh and Danube) by their administrator		Responsible: all members of MG Limes Date: permanent task
Regular revision activities on linear pipes of the utilities (gas, water, sewage)		
Responsible: ensuring of permanent protection of territory, regular monitoring with the aim to prevent possible risks through the competence of all members of the MG Limes		
IN THE AREA OF SECURING THE SITE AGAINST NATURAL DISASTERS		
Adhering to the valid legislation and liability arising from it at individual levels of management and prevention of floods by decreasing the damaging effects of weather conditions in the form of embankments and the safety of the waterworks in the Danube and Váh River basin	Fulfilled on an ongoing basis Responsible: according to the applicable legislation (MG Limes – indication of problems)	Control check Responsible: local self-government, RMBs Cooperation: MG Limes Date: ongoing
Bratislava-Rusovce – Gerulata, rímsky vojenský tábor (kastel)	Eliminate the growth in the intensity of housing constructions around Gerulata Regulate building of utility networks (gas, water, ...) near Gerulata	Control check of compliance with the Principles of protection, the spatial plan and applicable legislation Responsible: local self-government, RMB BA Cooperation: MG Limes Date: ongoing

Tasks for the years 2011 – 2021 (set in 2011 version of the Management Plan – part IV.)	Fulfilment of the tasks in the years 2011 – 2017 (state of affairs as of 16 November 2017)	Tasks for the years 2017 – 2021 (set at the MG Limes meeting on 10 November 2017 and supplemented by the MG Limes members up to 16 November 2017)
Iža – “Kelemantia”, rímsky vojenský tábor (kastel)	<p>Concerning the intention to build a bypass in the buffer zone – visually eliminate the road</p> <p>Ensure control of agricultural usage of the buffer zone from the archaeological aspect</p> <p>Relocate the shooting range from the buffer zone</p>	<p>Control check of compliance with the Principles of protection and the spatial plan</p> <p>Responsible: local self-government, RMB NR Cooperation: MG Limes Date: ongoing</p>

5. Implementation of the Management Plan

The management plan is carried out by the existing management system at all management levels. Management at the local level is ensured by the owners of the nominated parts. Management and implementation of tasks at regional and national level is ensured by the direct representation of the relevant organizations in the MG Limes.

Management Group Limes Romanus – Roman Ancient Monuments on the Middle Danube (MG Limes) will remain the basic management body. Where necessary, its membership can be modified according to changes in ownership or competencies. All tasks established in the management plan are ensured through the MG Limes members.

The Management Group Limes:

- ◆ ensures the component parts management in order to preserve and improve their values and achieve the management objectives;
- ◆ coordinates all activities at the component parts territory and their buffer zone;
- ◆ manages, controls and updates the tasks in all areas established in the Management Plan at least once a year;
- ◆ coordinates all involved subjects in order to ensure a joint course of action in addressing all tasks arising from the commitments of the state, the specialized state administration, regional and local self-government and the needs of the component parts themselves;
- ◆ discusses the outcomes of the site monitoring and adopts proper measures for the remedy and prevention of any medium-term and long-term threats;
- ◆ coordinates the common and unified monitoring procedures;
- ◆ participates in ensuring sustainable development of the component parts; and
- ◆ after the inscription on the World Heritage List the chair of the MG Limes represents all members in sessions of the Commission for the Coordination of tasks for the World Cultural Heritage preservation and at meetings of the Intergovernmental Committee – The Danube Limes and the Management Group for the Frontiers of the Roman Empire – Danube Limes (MG DL), where he/she presents proposals for problem solving at ministerial and international level.

Commission for the Coordination of the Tasks of the World Cultural Heritage Protection

- ◆ ensures implementation of the management plan tasks at the national level;
- ◆ addresses key tasks regarding the preservation of the World Heritage sites in SK entered in the WH List;
- ◆ adopts recommendations in the interest of the preservation, renovation, use and presentation of the World Heritage;
- ◆ applies the conclusions of this commission in its activities or according to the nature of tasks and measures and submits them to the session of the Slovak government, which assigns the tasks to other ministries as necessary.

The legislative and administrative ensuring of the preservation, renovation and presentation of both parts of the site are ensured at the appropriate level in compliance with the Act No. 49/2002 Coll. on the Protection of Monuments and Historic Sites.

Basic financing

The management plan anticipates the financing of the task implementation by the owners of the site, multi-resource financing of the site with state aid, the use of grant schemes and various EU funds in determining the progress and priorities. The owners, self-government and individual members of the MG Limes are responsible for the elaboration of the application of funds according to the assignment.

The control of expenditures in implementing individual tasks is ensured by the procurer of the work; the use of funds from the Ministry of Culture subsidies system and other funds control is controlled by the administrators of these grant schemes.

Problem solving

The existing legislative and management mechanisms are sufficient. However, the cooperation of all existing components is necessary.

5.a. Updated Address List of the Management Group „Limes Romanus – Ancient Roman Monuments on the Middle Danube

ADDRESS LIST

Management Group „Limes Romanus – Ancient Roman Monuments on the Middle Danube“
as of 10 November 2017

	Institution	Official representative	Address	Contact person
Chairmanship	Mestská časť Bratislava - Rusovce	Dušan Antoš (starosta – mayor)	Vývojová 8, 851 10 Bratislava podatelna@bratislava-rusovce.sk	JUDr. Ondrej Beračka, prednosta@bratislava-rusovce.sk
Permanent members	Ministerstvo kultúry SR	Mgr. Marek Maďarič (minister)	Námestie SNP 33, 813 31 Bratislava info@culture.gov.sk	RNDr. Alena Prokešová, alena.prokesova@culture.gov.sk
	Pamiatkový úrad SR	PhDr. Katarína Kosová (generálna riaditeľka – director general)	Cesta na Červený most 6, 814 06 Bratislava podatelna@pamiatky.gov.sk	Ing. arch. Ľubica Pinčíková, lubica.pincikova@pamiatky.gov.sk
	Krajský pamiatkový úrad Bratislava	PhDr. Peter Jurkovič (riaditeľ – director)	Leškova 17, 811 04 Bratislava podatelna.ba@pamiatky.gov.sk	PhDr. Karol Prášek, karol.prasek@pamiatky.gov.sk
	Krajský pamiatkový úrad Nitra	Ing. Anna Valeková (riaditeľka – director)	Nám. Jána Pavla II. 8, 949 01 Nitra podatelna.nr@pamiatky.gov.sk	Ing. Anna Valeková, anna.valekova@pamiatky.gov.sk; Mgr. Pavel Paterka, pavel.paterka@pamiatky.gov.sk
	Bratislavský samosprávny kraj	Mgr. Juraj Droba, MBA, MA (predseda – chairman)	Sabinovská 16, P.O. Box 106, 820 05 Bratislava 25 podatelna@region-bsk.sk	Mgr. Rastislav Šenkirík, rastislav.senkirik@region-bsk.sk
	Nitriansky samosprávny kraj	Doc. Ing. Milan Belica, PhD. (predseda – chairman)	Štefánikova trieda 69, 949 01 Nitra info@unsk.sk	PhDr. Katarína Ťurgeová, katarina.urgeova@unsk.sk
	Hlavné mesto SR Bratislava	JUDr. Ivo Nesrovnal (primátor – mayor)	Primaciálne námestie 1, 814 99 Bratislava info@bratislava.sk	Mgr. Soňa Beláková, belakova@bratislava.sk
Permanent members	Obec Iža	István Domin (starosta – mayor)	Ďateľinová 674, 946 39 Iža podatelna@iza.sk	István Domin, obeciza@iza.sk
	Mesto Komárno	Ing. László Stubendek (primátor – mayor)	Nám. generála Klapku 1, 945 01 Komárno info@komarno.sk	Mgr. Ľudovít Grafel, grafel@komarno.sk

	Institution	Official representative	Address	Contact person
	Múzeum mesta Bratislavy	PhDr. Peter Hyross (riaditeľ – director)	Radničná 1, 815 18 Bratislava mmba@bratislava.sk	PhDr. Jaroslava Schmidtová, jaroslava.schmidtova@bratislava.sk
	Podunajské múzeum v Komárne	Ing. Jozef Csütörtöky, CSc. (riaditeľ – director)	Palatínova ul. 13, 945 05 Komárno muzeumkomarno@gmail.com	Ing. Jozef Csütörtöky, CSc., muzeumkomarno@gmail.com
	Archeologic-ký ústav SAV	doc. PhDr. Matej Ruttkay, CSc. (riaditeľ – director)	Akademická 2, 949 21 Nitra nrausekr@savba.sk	PhDr. Ján Rajtár, jan.rajtars@savba.sk
	Slovenský vodohospodársky podnik, š.p.	Ing. Stanislav Gáborík (generálny riaditeľ – director general)	Radničné námestie 8, 969 55 Banská Štiavnica gr@svp.sk	Ing. Boris Kováč, boris.kovac@svp.sk; Ing. Juraj Fekete, komarno@svp.sk
	Lesy Slovenskej republiky, š.p.	Ing. Marian Staník (generálny riaditeľ – director general)	Námestie SNP 8, 975 66 Banská Bystrica lesysr@lesy.sk	JUDr. PhDr. Marián Nosál, PhD., marian.nosal@lesy.sk
	Slovenský pozemkový fond	JUDr. Dušan Hačko (generálny riaditeľ – director general)	Búdková 36, 817 15 Bratislava kancelariagr@pozfond.sk	Mgr. Elena Puškášová, puskasova@pozfond.sk
Guest members	Mestský ústav ochrany pamiatok	PhDr. Ivo Štassel (riaditeľ – director)	Uršulínska 9, 811 01 Bratislava muop@bratislava.sk	PhDr. Margaréta Musilová, margareta.musilova07@gmail.com
	Štátna ochrana prírody SR	Ing. Milan Boroš (generálny riaditeľ – director general)	Tajovského ul. 28B, 974 01 Banská Bystrica sekretariat@sopsr.sk	Ing. Michaela Mrázová, michaela.mrazova@sopsr.sk
	Správa CHKO Dunajské luhy	Ing., Mgr. Mária Vavříková (riaditeľka – director)	Korzo Bélu Bartóka 789/3 929 01 Dunajská Streda maria.vavrikova@sopsr.sk	Ing. Gabriel Izsák, gabriel.izsak@sopsr.sk
	–	Ing. arch. Magdaléna Janovská (autorka manažment plánu – author of management plan)	Nám. Majstra Pavla 38/A, 054 01 Levoča janovska@stonline.sk	Ing. arch. Magdaléna Janovská, janovska@stonline.sk
Guest members	Ministerstvo životného prostredia SR	Ing. László Solymos (minister)	Nám. Ľ. Štúra 1, 812 35 Bratislava podatelna@enviro.gov.sk	RNDr. Jana Durkošová, jana.durkosova@enviro.gov.sk
	Ministerstvo dopravy a výstavby SR	PaeDr. Arpád Érsek (minister)	Nám. slobody 6, P.O. Box 100, 810 05 Bratislava minister@mindop.sk	Ing. Kamila Hanáková, kamila.hanakova@mindop.sk
	Ministerstvo pôdohospodárstva a rozvoja vidieka SR	Ing. Gabriela Matečná (ministerka – minister)	Dobrovičova 12, 812 66 Bratislava info@land.gov.sk	Mgr. Katarína Krásna, katarina.krasna@land.gov.sk

6. Annex

LIST OF ACRONYMS

AI SAS	Archaeological Institute of the Slovak Academy of Sciences
BCC	Bratislava City Council
BCM	Bratislava City Museum
CB of Rusovce	Bratislava City Borough of Rusovce
DM KN	Danube Museum in Komárno
MB SR	Monuments Board of the Slovak Republic
MG Limes	Management Group of the Danube Limes in Slovakia "Limes Romanus – Ancient Roman Monuments on the Middle Danube"
NCM	National Cultural Monument
RMB BA	Regional Monuments Board Bratislava
RMB NR	Regional Monuments Board Nitra
WH	World Heritage

4. Towards a formal Research Framework for the nominated property *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes (Western Segment)* (Annex from Chapter 5.d)

The component parts of the nominated property *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes (Western Segment)* are not only connected through their common history, the linkage concerning their function, and the need to do everything to preserve their suggested Outstanding Universal Value, but also through a wide range of scientific questions. Either these concern the property as a whole or large parts of it or individual component parts in such a way that new results have a consequence for the whole property or parts of it. This calls for a Research Framework linking questions for individual sites with those for the property as a whole. However, these questions cannot be restricted to the nominated component parts as they are imbedded into a wider range of frontier installations and their surroundings. Therefore, there is a need to account for the Danube Limes as such and its wider setting. Future research therefore needs to consider also the parts not nominated here, the hinterland of the component parts and the landscape in which they are situated.

The idea of a Research Framework for the *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes (Western Segment)* has been approached by the States Parties participating over the years originally on national levels – as a loose system connecting different topics. Only in the past years the idea of a formal concept arose. Usually, the basis for the national research was provided by the results from a wider research interest of a particular person, mostly from a university or an institution, involving work on many different sites and/or through a number of inspired and encouraged people. Particularly mentioned should be the Austrian Archaeological Institute (ÖAI) and the Institute for the Study of Ancient Culture of the Austrian Academy of Science (ÖAW), the Ludwig Boltzmann Institute for Archaeological Prospection and Virtual Archaeology and the University of Vienna; among others with their intensive research in and around Carnuntum based on the Archaeological Park under HR Mag. Franz Humer (Amt der Niederösterreichischen Landesregierung, Abteilung Kunst und Kultur, Provinzial-Römische Archäologie), the Oberösterreichisches Landesmuseum and several partners of co-operation with a variety of research projects around the Upper Austrian national exhibition 2018 focused on Roman heritage, the Bayerisches Landesamt für Denkmalpflege and the Institute for Pre- and Early History and Archaeology of Roman Provinces of the Ludwig-Maximilian-University of Munich with the particular interest in the Danube Limes since the days of Prof. Dr. Günter Ulbert and Prof. Dr. Michael Mackensen. Opportunities of the national approach were the common language of the participants, similar methodology and traditions in research and a deeper knowledge usually through previous work on many different sites. For Germany, the bi-annual Limes-Colloquia organized by the German Limes-Commission with an increasing number of participants and people presenting papers got a growing importance in directing research. Originally, presented studies were concerned primarily with the World Heritage Site Upper German-Raetian Limes within the Frontiers of the Roman Empire, but over the years, more and more aspects of the German parts of The Danube Limes as well as the Lower German Limes on the Rhine were included.

On a wider level the tri-annual International Conferences of Roman Frontier Studies (Limes-Congresses) had and have a great importance for the exchange of ideas and approaches across all parts of the Roman Frontiers. Here aspects not only Europe but also of the Near East as well as of North Africa were presented, too, and therefore were considered in the wider discussion.

In respect to a formal Research Framework for the nominated property *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes (Western Segment)* structured work started with an international workshop in Passau,

DE, in October 2015, concerning the Danube Limes in Austria and Bavaria. Participants included not only archaeologists and historians with various institutional backgrounds but also some local politicians. In a preliminary step it was established that there exists a large discrepancy between the associations and expectations one has in respect to the “Danube Limes” and the questions and problems existing or discussed in relation to it and its component parts. Terms mentioned on the one side were the range of chronology, visibility of monuments, riverine frontier, navigation, routes along and across the river, and partially still standing monuments of the Late Antiquity. On the other side questions about the beginning and the end of the sites, people and their surroundings, the hinterland of the sites, the course(s) of the Danube in Roman and post-Roman times, the influence of the Romans to the people north of the Danube, trade and supply, early Christianity were pointed out; of course besides points concerning preservation, management and presentation.

In the discussion a focus was given to the following points:

- ◆ Chronology: although the general chronology of the sites at the Danube Limes seems to be clear and although there is little dispute about the overall sequence of developments of the Danube limes as such for many of the sites and component parts there is uncertainty about their exact beginning and end.
- ◆ Function of the river Danube: is the river primarily separator or connector, was it securely under Roman control, how was the traffic on the river organised, where were the harbours and how dependent were the military installations on the river? For a better judgement a lot depends on the knowledge of the course(s) and the water level/danger of flooding in Roman times, of which little is known so far.
- ◆ Interaction of the sites between each other and with the hinterland: here, too, the general lines seem to be clear. However, on a closer look, we lack information where the hinterland begins or, phrased differently, where the sites end. So far it is difficult to assess how intensive the exchange was of people and material, how high the dependencies in terms of supply were etc.

For each of these points it was obvious that more work is necessary on a local level in order to gain knowledge comparable across the sites and component parts. Much material as basis for such research has already been excavated and is existing in the archives and the storage of the museums. However, concentrated efforts are necessary to retrieve these “treasures”.

A second bi-national workshop took place in Vienna in January 2016. It was pointed out that much could be gained in general through the development of comparable data. Here the museums with their resources have to play a special supportive role. Although they usually form separate bodies from the institutions involved in the heritage management, latest since the establishment of the Danube Limes Interpretation Framework DLIF, the museums along the Danube Limes in Austria and Bavaria are well integrated in the communication and presentation network in those States. A similar integration is existing in Slovakia. On the other hand, non-invasive methods of prospection (in particular geophysics of various kinds, airborne-laserscanning etc.) could play an increasingly important role on the local level. To be able to judge the respective potential of the sites it was proposed to compile an inventory of areas where such prospective measures can be applied (usually outside the nominated areas). As an example with extremely far reaching results Carnuntum (ID No 31) was presented.

A third extended meeting with colleagues from all States Parties participating in the nomination *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes (Western Segment)* took place in Carnuntum during the final steps of writing this nomination as a joint effort in October 2017. As one result of the discussions of the previous gatherings a Master-thesis, delivered at the University of Innsbruck, was presented by the author.¹ Centre was the attempt to assess the level of research and knowledge existing for each of the component parts and associated (not selected) sites along the Danube Limes in Austria and Germany in a

¹ Stefan Pircher, Ripa Danuvii Raetiae et Norici. Eine kritische Beurteilung des Donaulimes in Bayern und Österreich (unpublished MA-thesis, Innsbruck 2017).

comparable way. Much as the approach as such and the parameters assessed as well as the weighing of their importance in relation to each other could be discussed or even criticised it was a valuable exercise to present the data in a uniform way.

It became clear that an essential for an overarching research framework would be the international research program CLIR (Corpus Limitis Imperii Romani), accepted as the 80th scientific program of the International Union of Academies, and established in 2011 for the Danube countries.² This running program provides far reaching facilities for common, harmonized research work for the States Parties along the Danube. Apart from national and international research programs also a series of monographs has been planned and partly elaborated. Its international database has been adapted for the *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes (Western Segment)* nomination. CLIR will provide the common international database for the future research along the nominated section of the *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes (Western Segment)* and for the planned extension through the eastern segment. It also has the potential to serve as the gathering of data connected with the maintenance and management of the *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes (Western Segment)* in case of its inscription into the List of World Heritage Sites.

Although the partners of the nomination of the *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes (Western Segment)* – Austria, Germany and Slovakia – have not established a common formal Research Framework yet, with the previous national, binational and multinational research and the international discussions they are on the right way. Of particular importance is that a number of common questions and goals have been identified. As the main objectives for research along the *Frontiers of the Roman Empire – The Danube Limes* in the future are – besides specialized research on individual component parts – questions concerning the various courses of the Danube and its immediate tributaries over the course of the 400 years of Roman occupation of the southern banks of the river and the particular role the river Danube and its tributaries played for the Romans. It also became clear, that this cannot be tackled by archaeologists and historians alone but that a truly interdisciplinary approach will be necessary. Within this, the fairly new discipline of Geoarchaeology will play a central role. There is hope that the next years will bring great advances. As the example of the World Heritage Site Upper German-Raetian Limes shows the inscription into the List of World Heritage Sites encourages more students and researchers of all possible disciplines to deal with the aspects of such a site.

² Zs. Visy, Corpus Limitis Imperii Romani (CLIR). Proceedings of the 22nd International Congress of the Roman Frontier Studies, Ruse, Bulgaria, September 2012 (Sofia 2015) 923–928.